



ASX ANNOUNCEMENT

1 November 2018

US Annual Report on Form 20-F

Melbourne, Australia, 1 November 2018: Genetic Technologies Limited (ASX: GTG; NASDAQ: GENE) is pleased to release the attached US Annual Report on Form 20-F for the year ended June 30, 2018 that was recently filed with the US Securities and Exchange Commission.

The Company has also filed the XBRL interactive data file with the US Securities and Exchange Commission, which is available via the company website at: <http://gtgcorporate.com/investor-centre/company-reports/>

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION PLEASE CONTACT

Dr Paul Kasian
Chairman and Interim CEO
Genetic Technologies Limited
+ 61 3 8412 7000

Jason Wong (USA)
Blueprint Life Science Group
+1 (415) 375 3340, Ext. 4

About Genetic Technologies Limited

Genetic Technologies Limited (ASX: GTG; Nasdaq: GENE) is a diversified molecular diagnostics company embracing blockchain technologies across Genomic testing platforms. GTG offers cancer predictive testing and assessment tools to help physicians proactively manage patient health. The Company's lead product, BREVAGen^{plus}®, is a clinically validated risk assessment test for non-hereditary breast cancer and is first in its class. For more information, please visit www.brevagenplus.com and www.phenogensciences.com.

Genetic Technologies is developing a pipeline of risk assessment products including a novel colorectal cancer (CRC) test. For more information, please visit www.gtgcorporate.com



Safe Harbor Statement

Any statements in this press release that relate to the Company's expectations are forward-looking statements, within the meaning of the [Private Securities Litigation Reform Act](#). The Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995 (PSLRA) implemented several significant substantive changes affecting certain cases brought under the federal securities laws, including changes related to pleading, discovery, liability, class representation and awards fees. Since this information may involve risks and uncertainties and are subject to change at any time, the Company's actual results may differ materially from expected results. Additional risks associated with Genetic Technologies' business can be found in its periodic filings with the SEC.

UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549

FORM 20-F

☐ REGISTRATION STATEMENT PURSUANT TO SECTION 12(b) OF THE SECURITIES
EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

OR

☒ ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES
EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934
For the fiscal year ended June 30, 2018

OR

☐ TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES
EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

OR

☐ SHELL COMPANY REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES
EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

Date of event requiring this shell company report

For the transition period from to

Commission file number 0-51504

GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LIMITED

(Exact name of Registrant as specified in its charter)

N/A

(Translation of Registrant’s name into English)

AUSTRALIA

(Jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)

60-66 Hanover Street, Fitzroy, Victoria, 3065, Australia
Telephone: 011 61 3 8412 7000; Facsimile: 011 61 3 8412 7040

(Address of principal executive offices)

Kevin Fischer
Telephone: 011 61 3 8412 7000; Facsimile: 011 61 3 8412 7040
Email: kevin.fischer@gtglabs.com
60-66 Hanover Street, Fitzroy, Victoria, 3065, Australia

(Name, Telephone, E-mail and/or Facsimile number and Address of Company Contact Person)

Securities registered or to be registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act. None

Securities registered or to be registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act.

American Depositary Shares each representing 150 Ordinary Shares
and evidenced by American Depositary Receipts

Title of each Class

[Table of Contents](#)

Securities for which there is a reporting obligation pursuant to Section 15(d) of the Act. **None**

Number of outstanding shares of each of the issuer’s classes of capital or common stock as of the close of the period covered by the annual report.

2,435,282,724 Ordinary Shares

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act.

☐ Yes ☒ No

If this report is an annual or transition report, indicate by check mark if the registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

☐ Yes ☒ No

Note — Checking the box above will not relieve any registrant required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 from their obligations under those Sections.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days.

☒ Yes ☐ No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically every Interactive Data File required to be submitted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit such files). ☒ Yes ☐ No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of “large accelerated filer,” “accelerated filer,” and “emerging growth company” in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act. (Check one):

Large accelerated filer ☐

Accelerated filer ☐

Non-accelerated filer ☒

Emerging growth company ☐

If an emerging growth company that prepares its financial statements in accordance with U.S. GAAP, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards† provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act. ☐ Yes ☐ No

† The term “new or revised financial accounting standard” refers to any update issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board to its Accounting Standards Codification after April 5, 2012.

Indicate by check mark which basis of accounting the registrant has used to prepare the financial statements included in this filing:

U.S. GAAP ☐

International Financial Reporting Standards as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board ☒

Other ☐

If “Other” has been checked in response to the previous question, indicate by check mark which financial statement item the registrant has elected to follow.

☐ Item 17 ☐ Item 18

If this is an annual report, indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act).

☐ Yes ☒ No

(APPLICABLE ONLY TO ISSUERS INVOLVED IN BANKRUPTCY PROCEEDINGS DURING THE PAST FIVE YEARS)

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has filed all documents and reports required to be filed by Sections 12, 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 subsequent to the distribution of securities under a plan confirmed by a court.

☐ Yes ☐ No

TABLE OF CONTENTS		
Item 1.	Identity of Directors, Senior Management and Advisers	1
Item 2.	Offer Statistics And Expected Timetable	1
Item 3.	Key Information	1
Item 3.A	Selected Financial Data	1
Item 3.B	Capitalization and Indebtedness	3
Item 3.C	Reasons for the Offer and Use of Proceeds	3
Item 3.D	Risk Factors	4
Item 4.	Information on the Company	19
Item 4.A	History and Development of the Company	19
Item 4.B	Business Overview	20
Item 4.C	Corporate Structure	29
Item 4.D	Property, Plant and Equipment	29
Item 5.	Operating and Financial Review and Prospects	30
Item 5.A	Operating Results	30
Item 5.B	Liquidity and Capital Resources	34
Item 5.C	Research and Development, Patents and Licenses, etc.	35
Item 5.D	Trend Information	36
Item 5E.	Off-balance sheet arrangements	36
Item 5F.	Information about contractual obligations	36
Item 6.	Directors, Senior Management and Employees	36
Item 6.A	Directors and Senior Management	36
Item 6.B	Compensation	38

Table of Contents

<u>Item 6.C</u>	<u>Board Practices</u>	44
<u>Item 6.D</u>	<u>Employees</u>	46
<u>Item 6.E</u>	<u>Share Ownership</u>	46
<u>Item 7.</u>	<u>Major Shareholders and Related Party Transactions</u>	46
<u>Item 7.A</u>	<u>Major Shareholders</u>	46
<u>Item 7.B</u>	<u>Related Party Transactions</u>	46
<u>Item 7.C</u>	<u>Interests of Experts and Counsel</u>	47
<u>Item 8.</u>	<u>Financial Information</u>	47
<u>Item 8.A</u>	<u>Consolidated Statements and Other Financial Information</u>	47
<u>Item 8.B</u>	<u>Significant Changes to Financial Information</u>	48
<u>Item 9.</u>	<u>The Offer and Listing</u>	49
<u>Item 9.A</u>	<u>Offer and Listing Details</u>	49
<u>Item 9.B</u>	<u>Plan of Distribution</u>	51
<u>Item 9.C</u>	<u>Markets</u>	51
<u>Item 9.D</u>	<u>Selling Shareholders</u>	51
<u>Item 9.E</u>	<u>Dilution</u>	51
<u>Item 9.F</u>	<u>Expenses of the Issue</u>	51
<u>Item 10.</u>	<u>Additional Information</u>	51
<u>Item 10.A</u>	<u>Share Capital</u>	51
<u>Item 10.B</u>	<u>Our Constitution</u>	55
<u>Item 10.C</u>	<u>Material Contracts</u>	56
<u>Item 10.D</u>	<u>Exchange Controls and Other Limitations Affecting Security Holders</u>	56
<u>Item 10.E</u>	<u>Taxation</u>	57
<u>Item 10.F</u>	<u>Dividends and Paying Agents</u>	63
<u>Item 10.G</u>	<u>Statement by Experts</u>	63
<u>Item 10.H</u>	<u>Documents on Display</u>	63
<u>Item 10.I</u>	<u>Subsidiary Information</u>	63
<u>Item 11.</u>	<u>Quantitative And Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk</u>	64

Table of Contents

<u>Item 12.</u>	<u>Description Of Securities Other Than Equity Securities</u>	64
<u>Item 12.A</u>	<u>Debt Securities</u>	64
<u>Item 12.B</u>	<u>Warrants and Rights</u>	64
<u>Item 12.C</u>	<u>Other Securities</u>	64
<u>Item 12.D</u>	<u>American Depositary Shares</u>	64
<u>Item 13.</u>	<u>Defaults, Dividend Arrearages and Delinquencies</u>	64
<u>Item 14.</u>	<u>Material Modifications to The Rights Of Security Holders and Use Of Proceeds</u>	64
<u>Item 15.</u>	<u>Controls and Procedures</u>	65
<u>Item 15.A</u>	<u>Disclosure controls and procedures</u>	65
<u>Item 15.B</u>	<u>Management’s annual report on internal control over financial reporting</u>	65
<u>Item 15.C</u>	<u>Attestation report of the registered public accounting firm</u>	66
<u>Item 15.D</u>	<u>Changes in internal control over financial reporting</u>	66
<u>Item 16.A</u>	<u>Audit Committee Financial Expert</u>	66
<u>Item 16.B</u>	<u>Code Of Ethics</u>	66
<u>Item 16.C</u>	<u>Principal Accountant Fees and Services</u>	67
<u>Item 16.D</u>	<u>Exemptions From The Listing Standards For Audit Committees</u>	68
<u>Item 16.E</u>	<u>Purchases Of Equity Securities By The Issuer And Affiliated Purchasers</u>	68
<u>Item 16.F</u>	<u>Change in Registrant’s Certifying Accountant</u>	68
<u>Item 16.G</u>	<u>Corporate Governance</u>	68
<u>Item 16.H</u>	<u>Mine Safety Disclosure</u>	68
<u>Item 17.</u>	<u>Financial Statements</u>	68
<u>Item 18.</u>	<u>Financial Statements</u>	69
<u>Item 19.</u>	<u>Exhibits</u>	69

INTRODUCTION

In this Annual Report, the “Company,” “Genetic Technologies,” “we,” “us” and “our” refer to Genetic Technologies Limited and its consolidated subsidiaries.

Our consolidated financial statements are set out on pages F1 to F39 of this Annual Report (refer to Item 18 “Financial Statements”).

References to the “ADSs” are to our ADSs described in Item 12.D “American Depositary Shares” and references to the “Ordinary Shares” are to our Ordinary Shares described in Item 10.A “Share Capital”.

Our fiscal year ends on June 30 and references in this Annual Report to any specific fiscal year are to the twelve month period ended on June 30 of such year.

FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This Annual Report contains forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. We use words such as “anticipates”, “believes”, “plans”, “expects”, “future”, “intends” and similar expressions to identify such forward-looking statements. This Annual Report also contains forward-looking statements attributed to certain third parties relating to their estimates regarding the growth of Genetic Technologies and related service markets and spending. You should not place undue reliance on these forward-looking statements, which apply only as of the date of this Annual Report. Our actual results could differ materially from those anticipated in these forward-looking statements for many reasons, including the risks faced by us described below under the caption “Risk Factors” and elsewhere in this Annual Report.

Although we believe that the expectations reflected in such forward-looking statements are reasonable at this time, we can give no assurance that such expectations will prove to be correct. Given these uncertainties, readers are cautioned not to place undue reliance on such forward-looking statements. Important factors that could cause actual results to differ materially from our expectations are contained in cautionary statements in this Annual Report including, without limitation, in conjunction with the forward-looking statements included in this Annual Report and specifically under Item 3.D “Risk Factors”.

All subsequent written and oral forward-looking statements attributable to us are expressly qualified in their entirety by reference to these cautionary statements.

ENFORCEMENT OF LIABILITIES AND SERVICE OF PROCESS

We are incorporated under the laws of Western Australia in the Commonwealth of Australia. The majority of our directors and executive officers, and any experts named in this Annual Report, reside outside the U.S. Substantially all of our assets, our directors’ and executive officers’ assets and such experts’ assets are located outside the U.S. As a result, it may not be possible for investors to affect service of process within the U.S. upon us or our directors, executive officers or such experts, or to enforce against them or us in U.S. courts, judgments obtained in U.S. courts based upon the civil liability provisions of the federal securities laws of the U.S. In addition, we have been advised by our Australian solicitors that there is doubt that the courts of Australia will enforce against us, our directors, executive officers and experts named herein, judgments obtained in the U.S. based upon the civil liability provisions of the federal securities laws of the U.S. or will enter judgments in original actions brought in Australian courts based upon the federal securities laws of the U.S.

PART I

Item 1. Identity of Directors, Senior Management and Advisers

Not applicable

Item 2. Offer Statistics and Expected Timetable

Not applicable.

Item 3. Key Information

Item 3.A Selected Financial Data

The following selected financial data for the five years ended June 30, 2018 is derived from the audited consolidated financial statements of Genetic Technologies Limited, prepared in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (“IFRS”) as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board, which became effective for our Company as of our fiscal year ended June 30, 2006.

The balance sheet data as of June 30, 2018 and 2017 and the statement of comprehensive income/(loss) data for the 2018, 2017 and 2016 fiscal years are derived from our audited consolidated financial statements which are included in this Annual Report. Balance sheet data as of June 30, 2016, 2015 and 2014 and statement of comprehensive income/ (loss) data for the 2015 and 2014 financial years are derived from our audited consolidated financial statements which are not included in this Annual Report. The data should be read in conjunction with the consolidated financial statements, related notes and other financial information included herein.

All amounts are stated in Australian dollars as of June 30, as noted.

GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LIMITED

CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME/ (LOSS)
FOR 2018, 2017, 2016, 2015 AND 2014

	Year ended June 30, 2018	Year ended June 30, 2017	Year ended June 30, 2016	Year ended June 30, 2015	Year ended June 30, 2014
	AUD	AUD	AUD	AUD	AUD
Revenue from operations					
Genetic testing services	189,254	518,506	824,586	2,011,918	4,564,280
Less: cost of sales	(300,088)	(492,417)	(743,060)	(891,243)	(1,837,729)
Gross profit from operations	(110,834)	26,089	81,526	1,120,675	2,726,551
Other revenue	—	—	300,548	1,027,151	863,832
Gain on deconsolidation of subsidiary	—	—	—	—	761,361
Selling and marketing expenses	(1,066,404)	(2,721,474)	(3,186,497)	(4,504,299)	(6,251,595)
General and administrative expenses	(3,015,818)	(3,109,530)	(3,429,357)	(4,222,988)	(3,173,109)
Licensing, patent and legal costs	—	—	(103,581)	(435,418)	(1,079,199)
Laboratory, research and development costs	(2,210,498)	(2,366,334)	(2,584,752)	(2,851,665)	(3,298,127)
Finance costs	(28,843)	(31,995)	(28,889)	(264,694)	(744,199)
Foreign exchange gains reclassified on liquidation of subsidiary	527,049	—	—	—	—
Gain on disposal of business	—	—	—	1,396,798	—
Impairment of intangible asset expense	—	(544,694)	—	—	—
Fair value loss on ImmunAid option fee	—	—	—	(795,533)	—
Share of net loss of associates accounted for using the equity method	—	—	—	—	(362,682)
Fair value gain/ (loss) on financial liabilities at fair value through profit or loss	—	—	—	349,246	(648,374)
Non-operating income and expenses	441,476	344,112	492,037	370,557	1,071,072
Profit/(loss) from continuing operations before income tax	(5,463,872)	(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)	(8,810,170)	(10,134,469)
Net profit from discontinued operation	—	—	—	—	—
Profit/(loss) before income tax	(5,463,872)	(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)	(8,810,170)	(10,134,469)
Income tax expense	—	—	—	—	—
Profit/(loss) for the year	(5,463,872)	(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)	(8,810,170)	(10,134,469)
Other comprehensive income/(loss)					
Exchange gains/(losses) on translation of controlled foreign operations	(522,966)	(130,655)	1,307,219	414,005	(149,162)
Exchange gains/(losses) on translation of non-controlled foreign operations	—	—	—	—	86
Other comprehensive income/(loss) for the year, net of tax	(522,966)	(130,655)	1,307,219	414,005	(149,076)
Total comprehensive profit/(loss) for the year	(5,986,481)	(8,534,481)	(7,151,746)	(8,396,165)	(10,283,545)
Profit/(loss) for the year is attributable to:					
Owners of Genetic Technologies Limited	(5,463,872)	(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)	(8,810,170)	(10,125,197)
Non-controlling interests	—	—	—	—	(9,272)
Total profit/(loss) for the year	(5,463,872)	(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)	(8,810,170)	(10,134,469)
Total comprehensive profit/(loss) for the year is attributable to:					
Owners of Genetic Technologies Limited	(5,986,838)	(8,534,481)	(7,151,746)	(8,396,165)	(10,274,359)
Non-controlling interests	—	—	—	—	(9,186)
Total comprehensive profit/(loss) for the year	(5,986,838)	(8,534,481)	(7,151,746)	(8,396,165)	(10,283,545)
Earnings/(loss) per share (cents per share)					
Basic and diluted net profit/(loss) per ordinary share	(0.22)	(0.40)	(0.49)	(0.82)	(1.76)
Weighted-average shares outstanding	2,435,282,724	2,121,638,888	1,715,214,158	1,072,803,358	574,557,747

GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LIMITED

CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEET DATA

FOR 2018, 2017, 2016, 2015 AND 2014

	As of June 30, 2018 AUD	As of June 30, 2017 AUD	As of June 30, 2016 AUD	As of June 30, 2015 AUD	As of June 30, 2014 AUD
Assets					
Current assets	5,990,697	11,631,649	12,131,070	19,566,096	4,360,509
Non-current assets	175,284	476,648	1,158,616	1,153,636	2,368,690
Total assets	6,165,981	12,108,297	13,289,686	20,719,732	6,729,199
Liabilities					
Current liabilities	(1,450,713)	(1,465,293)	(1,332,189)	(1,735,163)	(2,318,016)
Non-current liabilities	(3,390)	(63,960)	(74,308)	(25,321)	(2,583,664)
Total liabilities	(1,454,103)	(1,529,253)	(1,406,497)	(1,760,484)	(4,901,680)
Net assets	4,711,878	10,579,044	11,883,189	18,959,248	1,827,519
Equity					
Contributed equity	122,372,662	122,382,625	115,272,576	115,247,128	90,080,492
Reserves	5,651,162	6,044,493	6,054,861	4,697,403	3,922,140
Accumulated losses	(123,311,946)	(117,848,074)	(109,444,248)	(100,985,283)	(92,175,113)
Non-controlling interests	—	—	—	—	—
Total equity	4,711,878	10,579,044	11,883,189	18,959,248	1,827,519

Exchange rates

The following table sets forth, for the periods and dates indicated, certain information concerning the noon buying rate in New York City for Australian dollars expressed in U.S. dollars per \$1.00 as certified for customs purposes by the Federal Reserve Bank of New York.

Period ended	At period end USD	Average rate USD	High USD	Low USD
Yearly data				
June 2014	0.9427	0.9186	0.9705	0.8715
June 2015	0.7704	0.8365	0.9488	0.7566
June 2016	0.7432	0.7289	0.7817	0.6855
June 2017	0.7676	0.7562	0.7680	0.7387
June 2018	0.7399	0.7753	0.8105	0.7355
Monthly data				
April 2018	0.7543	0.7684	0.7784	0.7543
May 2018	0.7570	0.7525	0.7595	0.7445
June 2018	0.7399	0.7498	0.7677	0.7355
July 2018	0.7438	0.7403	0.7466	0.7322
August 2018	0.7192	0.7325	0.7428	0.7192
September 2018	0.7238	0.7206	0.7278	0.7107
October 19, 2018	0.7132			

Item 3.B Capitalization and Indebtedness

Not applicable.

Item 3.C Reasons for the Offer and Use of Proceeds

Not applicable.

Item 3.D Risk Factors

Before you purchase our ADSs, you should be aware that there are risks, including those described below. You should consider carefully these risk factors together with all of the other information contained elsewhere in this Annual Report before you decide to purchase our ADSs.

Risks Related to our Business and Business Strategy

A material uncertainty exists that may cast significant doubt about our Company's ability to continue as a Going concern.

For the year ending June 30, 2018, the Group incurred a total comprehensive loss of \$5,986,838 (2017: \$8,534,481) and net cash outflow from operations of \$5,621,315 (2017: \$6,813,639). As at June 30, 2018 the Group held total cash and cash equivalents of \$5,487,035.

During the 2019 financial year, the Directors expect increased cash outflows from operations as the Company continues to invest resources in expanding the research & development, sales & marketing, and blockchain activities in support of the distribution of BREVAGen^{plus}® and its pipeline of risk assessment products. As a result of these expected cash outflows, the Directors intend to raise new equity funding within the next twelve months in order to ensure the Company continues to hold adequate levels of available cash resources to meet creditors and other commitments. The Company has subsequent to June 30, 2018 executed an equity placement facility with Kentgrove Capital Pty Ltd whereby it has an opportunity to raise equity funding of up to \$20 million in a series of individual placements of up to \$1 million (or a higher amount by mutual agreement) over a period of 20 months, expiring April 7, 2020. The Company has in place an open Placement Prospectus, which provides the Company with greater flexibility should the opportunity arise to offer and issue any of the Placement Shares while this Prospectus remains open. Since June 30, 2018, the Company has issued 100,000,000 shares under this facility, resulting in cash inflows from financing of \$1,350,000. In addition to this facility the Directors will also consider other sources of equity funding through traditional offerings in either Australia or the United States.

The continuing viability of the Company and its ability to continue as a going concern and meet its debts and commitments as they fall due is dependent on the satisfactory completion of planned equity raisings, which are not guaranteed.

Due to the uncertainty surrounding the timing, quantum or the ability to raise additional equity, there is a material uncertainty that may cast significant doubt on the Group's ability to continue as a going concern and therefore, that it may be unable to realise its assets and discharge its liabilities in the normal course of business. However, the Directors believe that the Group will be successful in the above matters and accordingly, have prepared the financial report on a going concern basis. As such no adjustments have been made to the financial statements relating to the recoverability and classification of the asset carrying amounts or classification of liabilities that might be necessary should the Group not be able to continue as a going concern.

Our stock price is volatile and can fluctuate significantly based on events not in our control and general industry conditions. As a result, the value of your investment may decline significantly.

The biotechnology sector can be particularly vulnerable to abrupt changes in investor sentiment. Stock prices of companies in the biotechnology industry, including ours, can swing dramatically, with little relationship to operating performance. Our stock price may be affected by a number of factors including, but not limited to:

- product development events;
- the outcome of litigation;
- decisions relating to intellectual property rights;
- the entrance of competitive products or technologies into our markets;
- new medical discoveries;
- the establishment of strategic partnerships and alliances;
- changes in reimbursement policies or other practices related to the pharmaceutical industry; or
- other industry and market changes or trends.

Since our listing on the Australian Securities Exchange in August 2000, the price of our Ordinary Shares has ranged from a low of \$0.006 to a high of \$0.97 per share. Further fluctuations are likely to occur due to events which are not within our control and general market conditions affecting the biotechnology sector or the stock market generally.

[Table of Contents](#)

In addition, low trading volume may increase the volatility of the price of our ADSs. A thin trading market could cause the price of our ADSs to fluctuate significantly more than the stock market as a whole. For example, trades involving a relatively small number of our ADSs may have a greater impact on the trading price for our ADSs than would be the case if the trading volume were higher.

The following chart illustrates the fluctuation in the price of our shares (in Australian dollars) over the last five years:



(Refer Item 9.A for more information on key data points on this chart)
(Source: Yahoo Finance: <https://au.finance.yahoo.com/>)

The fact that we do not expect to pay cash dividends may lead to decreased prices for our stock.

We have never declared or paid a cash dividend on our Ordinary Shares and we do not anticipate to do so in the foreseeable future. We intend to retain future cash earnings, if any, for reinvestment in the development and expansion of our business. Whether we pay cash dividends in the future will be at the discretion of our Board of Directors and may be dependent on our financial condition, results of operations, capital requirements and any other factors our Board of Directors decides is relevant. As a result, an investor may only recognize an economic gain on an investment in our stock from an appreciation in the price of our stock, which is uncertain and unpredictable. There is no guarantee that our ordinary shares will appreciate in value or even maintain the price at which an investor purchased the ordinary shares.

You may have difficulty in effecting service of legal process and enforcing judgments against us and our Management.

We are a public company limited by shares, registered and operating under the Australian *Corporations Act 2001*. The majority of our directors and officers named in this Annual Report reside outside the U.S. Substantially all, or a substantial portion of, the assets of those persons are also located outside the U.S. As a result, it may not be possible to affect service on such persons in the U.S. or to enforce, in foreign courts, judgments against such persons obtained in U.S. courts and predicated on the civil liability provisions of the federal securities laws of the U.S. Furthermore, substantially all of our directly-owned assets are located outside the U.S., and, as such, any judgment obtained in the U.S. against us may not be collectible within the U.S. There is doubt as to the enforceability in the Commonwealth of Australia, in original actions or in actions for enforcement of judgments of U.S. courts, of civil liabilities predicated solely upon federal or state securities laws of the U.S., especially in the case of enforcement of judgments of U.S. courts where the defendant has not been properly served in Australia.

[Table of Contents](#)

Because we are not necessarily required to provide you with the same information as an issuer of securities based in the United States, you may not be afforded the same protection or information you would have if you had invested in a public corporation based in the United States.

We are exempt from certain provisions of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, commonly referred to as the Exchange Act, that are applicable to U.S. public companies, including (i) the rules under the Exchange Act requiring the filing with the SEC of quarterly reports on Form 10-Q or current reports on Form 8-K; (ii) the sections of the Exchange Act regulating the solicitation of proxies, consents or authorizations in respect of a security registered under the Exchange Act; and (iii) the sections of the Exchange Act requiring insiders to file public reports of their stock ownership and trading activities and liability for insiders who profit from trades made in a short period of time. The exempt provisions would be available to you if you had invested in a U.S. corporation.

However, in line with the Australian Securities Exchange regulations, we disclose our financial results on a semi-annual basis (which is performed under International Standard on Review Engagements) and to be fully audited annually (which is performed under International Standards on Auditing) which are required to have a limited review semi-annually and to be fully audited annually. The information, which may have an effect on our stock price on the Australian Securities Exchange, will be disclosed to the Australian Securities Exchange and also the Securities Exchange Commission. Other relevant information pertaining to our Company will also be disclosed in line with the Australian Securities Exchange regulations and information dissemination requirements for listed companies. We will provide our semi-annual results and other material information that we make public in Australia in the U.S. under the cover of an SEC Form 6-K. Nevertheless, you may not be afforded the same protection or information, which would be made available to you, were you investing in a United States public corporation because the requirements of a Form 10-Q and Form 8-K are not applicable to us.

If significant liquidity does not eventuate for our ADSs on NASDAQ, your ability to resell your ADSs could be negatively affected because there would be limited buyers for your interests.

Historically, there was virtually no trading in our ADSs through the pink sheets after the establishment of our Level I ADR Program. However, subsequent to the Level II listing of our ADSs on the NASDAQ Global Market on September 2, 2005, the trading volumes of our ADSs have increased. The Company subsequently transferred the listing of its ADSs to the NASDAQ Capital Market effective as from June 30, 2010. An active trading market for the ADSs, however, may not be maintained in the future. If an active trading market is not maintained, the liquidity and trading prices of the ADSs could be negatively affected.

In certain circumstances, holders of ADSs may have limited rights relative to holders of Ordinary Shares.

The rights of holders of ADSs with respect to the voting of Ordinary Shares and the right to receive certain distributions may be limited in certain respects by the deposit agreement entered into by us and The Bank of New York Mellon. For example, although ADS holders are entitled under the deposit agreement, subject to any applicable provisions of Australian law and of our Constitution, to instruct the depositary as to the exercise of the voting rights pertaining to the Ordinary Shares represented by the American Depositary Shares, and the depositary has agreed that it will try, as far as practical, to vote the Ordinary Shares so represented in accordance with such instructions, ADS holders may not receive notices sent by the depositary in time to ensure that the depositary will vote the Ordinary Shares. This means that, from a practical point of view, the holders of ADSs may not be able to exercise their right to vote. In addition, under the deposit agreement, the depositary has the right to restrict distributions to holders of the ADSs in the event that it is unlawful or impractical to make such distributions. We have no obligation to take any action to permit distributions to holders of our American Depositary Receipts, or ADSs. As a result, holders of ADSs may not receive distributions made by us.

Our Company has a history of incurring losses.

The business now called Genetic Technologies Limited was founded in 1989. With the exception of the year ended June 30, 2011, the Company has incurred operating losses in every year of its existence. As at June 30, 2018, the Company had accumulated losses of \$123,311,946 and the extent of any future losses and whether or not the Company can generate profits in future years remains uncertain. The Company currently does not generate sufficient revenue to cover its operating expenses. We expect our capital outlays and operating expenditures to continue to increase for the foreseeable future as we continue to commercialise existing R&D capabilities, IP and introduce an enhanced BREVA*Genplus* breast cancer risk assessment test and a colon cancer risk assessment test progress development of a suite of genetic screening tests targeting both cancer and non-oncological diseases utilising the latest technology and platforms, and explore and capitalise on blockchain opportunities in the medical and biotech industries.

There is no certainty that the Company will be able to raise additional funds by issuing further shares and/or the raising of debt and, if such funds are available, on what terms the Company would be able to secure them. If we fail to generate sufficient revenue and eventually become profitable, or if we are unable to fund our continuing losses, our shareholders could lose all or part of their investments.

There is a substantial risk that we are, or will become, a passive foreign investment company, or PFIC, which will subject our U.S. investors to adverse tax rules.

Holders of our ADSs who are U.S. residents face income tax risks. There is a substantial risk that we are, or will become, a passive foreign investment company, commonly referred to as a PFIC. Our treatment as a PFIC could result in a reduction in the after-tax return to the holders of our ADSs and would likely cause a reduction in the value of such ADSs. For U.S. federal income tax purposes, we will be classified as a PFIC for any taxable year in which either (i) 75% or more of our gross income is passive income, or (ii) at least 50% of the average value of all of our assets for the taxable year produce or are held for the production of passive income. For this purpose, cash is considered to be an asset that produces passive income. We believe that we were a PFIC for the taxable year ended June 30, 2018 and there is a substantial risk we will be classified as a PFIC for the current taxable year. If we are classified as a PFIC for U.S. federal income tax purposes, highly complex rules will apply to U.S. holders owning ADSs. Accordingly, you are urged to consult your tax advisors regarding the application of such rules. United States residents should carefully read “Item 10.E. Additional Information—Taxation, United States Federal Income Tax Consequences” in this Annual Report, for a more complete discussion of the U.S. federal income tax risks related to owning and disposing of our ADSs.

The failure to establish sales, marketing and distribution capacity will materially impact our ability to successfully market and sell our genetic risk assessment tests

We currently have no experience in marketing, sales or distribution of genetic risk assessment tests. We announced in August 2018 that we were transitioning the BREVAGenplus commercial program from a direct salesforce in the US to an ecommerce based sales solution. To successfully establish a web based Consumer Initiated Testing (CIT) platform for the BREVAGenplus and future genetic risk assessment tests, we will have to enter into marketing arrangements with other parties who have established appropriate marketing and sales capabilities in the design and development of a suitable ecommerce platform. We may not be able to enter into marketing arrangements with any marketing party, or if such arrangements are established, our marketing partners may not be able to develop and design an ecommerce sales solution that achieves commercial success for BREVAGenplus or other future genetic risk assessment test. Failure to establish sufficient marketing capabilities through engagement with third party marketing service providers will materially impact our ability to successfully market and sell our tests.

If We Fail To Maintain An Effective System Of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting, We May Not Be Able To Accurately Report Our Financial Results Or Prevent Fraud.

Effective internal controls over financial reporting are necessary for us to provide reliable financial reports and, together with adequate disclosure controls and procedures, are designed to prevent fraud. Any failure to design and implement an effective system of internal control may reveal deficiencies in our internal controls over financial reporting that are deemed to be material weaknesses. Ineffective internal controls could also cause investors to lose confidence in our reported financial information, which could have a negative effect on the trading price of the ADSs and our ordinary shares.

As of June 30, 2018 Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer assessed the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting. In making this assessment, management used the criteria set forth by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission in *Internal Control — Integrated Framework (2013)*. A material weakness is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control over financial reporting such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the annual or interim financial statements will not be prevented or detected on a timely basis. In connection with this assessment, we identified the following material weaknesses in internal control over financial reporting as of June 30, 2018.

The Company did not maintain an adequate segregation of duties with respect to internal control over financial reporting, given we have limited accounting personnel to enable and sufficiently evidence an independent review of complex financial reporting matters.

In an effort to remediate the identified material weaknesses and to enhance our overall control environment, we have implemented key steps to ensure continuity in the finance team and ongoing training, which through the introduction of a more controlled month end closing process has provided opportunity for the finance team to take on tasks including the preparation of the month end Finance Board reports and the FY2018 Annual Report which can now be reviewed by the CFO. Refer to Item 15 of this annual report on Form 20-F for further information on our remediation activities. We cannot assure you that the measures we have taken to date, and actions we may take in the future, will be sufficient to remediate the control deficiencies that led to our material weaknesses in our internal control over financial reporting or that they will prevent potential future material weaknesses.

Risks related to the Company’s Blockchain Projects

There is an Uncertain Regulatory Framework for Blockchain Technology. Changes to the framework could negatively affect us.

The regulatory status of blockchain technology is unclear or unsettled in many jurisdictions. It is difficult to predict how or whether governmental authorities will regulate such technologies. It is likewise difficult to predict how or whether any governmental authority may make changes to existing laws, regulations and/or rules that will affect blockchain technology and its applications. Such changes could negatively affect us in various ways, including ceasing the development of our blockchain projects or ceasing operations in a jurisdiction in the event that governmental or other actions make such operations unlawful or commercially undesirable to continue.

Blockchain technology will operate in a new and developing legal and regulatory environment. There is no established body of law or court decisions concerning blockchain and smart contracts. The Company may need to change its business model to comply with these licensing and/or registration requirements (or any other legal or regulatory requirements) in order to avoid violating applicable laws or regulations or because of the cost of such compliance. Uncertainty in how the legal and regulatory environment will develop could negatively impact the Company.

There is a risk that the Company’s Blockchain Technology could be Superseded or not function as intended.

There can be no assurance that the technology being proposed to underpin the Company’s blockchain applications will not be supplanted by competing protocols that improve upon, or fully replace, the Company’s technology. In addition, the Company’s use of blockchain may include coding errors or otherwise not function as intended, which may negatively affect its functionality.

Blockchain technology may be subject to risks of hacking and security weakness, which could have an adverse effect on the Company’s projects or implementation.

Hackers or other malicious groups or organizations may attempt to interfere with the Company’s blockchain in a variety of ways, including but not limited to malware attacks, denial of service attacks, consensus-based attacks, Sybil attacks, smurfing and spoofing. Furthermore, hackers or other individuals may uncover and exploit intentional or unintentional bugs or weaknesses in the network. Any of these risks if they occur could have a materially adverse effect on the Company’s projects or the implementation of its blockchain applications.

Risks Related to our Industry

Our sales cycle is typically lengthy.

The sales cycle for our testing products is typically lengthy. As a result, we may expend substantial funds and management effort with no assurance of successfully selling our products or services. Our ability to obtain customers for our molecular risk assessment and predictive genetic testing services depends significantly on the perception that our services can help accelerate efforts in genomics. Our sales effort requires the effective demonstration of the benefits of our services to, and significant training of, many different departments within a potential customer. In addition, we sometimes are required to negotiate agreements containing terms unique to each customer. Our business could also be adversely affected if we expend money without any return.

If our competitors develop superior products, our operations and financial condition could be affected.

We are currently subject to increased competition from biotechnology and diagnostic companies, academic and research institutions and government or other publicly-funded agencies that are pursuing products and services which are substantially similar to our molecular risk assessment testing services, or which otherwise address the needs of our customers and potential customers. Our competitors in the predictive genetic testing and assessment market include private and public sector enterprises located in Australia, the U.S. and elsewhere. Many of the organizations competing with us are much larger and have more ready access to needed resources. In particular, they would have greater experience in the areas of finance, research and development, manufacturing, marketing, sales, distribution, technical and regulatory matters than we do. In addition, many of the larger current and potential competitors have already established name / brand recognition and more extensive collaborative relationships.

Our competitive position in the molecular risk assessment and predictive testing area is based upon, amongst other things, our ability to:

- maintain first to market advantage;
- continue to strengthen and maintain scientific credibility through the process of obtaining scientific validation and undertaken further clinical trials supported by Peer-reviewed publication in medical journals;
- create and maintain scientifically-advanced technology and offer proprietary products and services;
- attract and retain qualified personnel;
- obtain patent or other protection for our products and services;

[Table of Contents](#)

- obtain required government approvals and other accreditations on a timely basis; and
- successfully market our products and services.

If we are not successful in meeting these goals, our business could be adversely affected. Similarly, our competitors may succeed in developing technologies, products or services that are more effective than any that we are developing or that would render our technology and services obsolete, noncompetitive or uneconomical.

We have important relationships with external parties over whom we have limited control.

We have relationships with academic consultants and other advisers who are not employed by us. Accordingly, we have limited control over their activities and can expect only limited amounts of their time to be dedicated to our activities. These persons may have consulting, employment or advisory arrangements with other entities that may conflict with or compete with their obligations to us. Our consultants typically sign agreements that provide for confidentiality of our proprietary information and results of studies. However, in connection with every relationship, we may not be able to maintain the confidentiality of our technology, the dissemination of which could hurt our competitive position and results from operations. To the extent that our scientific consultants develop inventions or processes independently that may be applicable to our proposed products, disputes may arise as to the ownership of the proprietary rights to such information, and we may not be successful with any dispute outcomes.

We may be subject to professional liability suits and our insurance may not be sufficient to cover damages. If this occurs, our business and financial condition may be adversely affected.

Our business exposes us to potential liability risks that are inherent in the testing, manufacturing, marketing and sale of molecular risk assessment and predictive tests. The use of our products and product candidates, whether for clinical trials or commercial sale, may expose us to professional liability claims and possible adverse publicity. We may be subject to claims resulting from incorrect results of analysis of genetic variations or other screening tests performed using our services. Litigation of such claims could be costly. We could expend significant funds during any litigation proceeding brought against us. Further, if a court were to require us to pay damages to a plaintiff, the amount of such damages could be significant and severely damage our financial condition. Although we have public and product liability insurance coverage under broadform liability and professional indemnity policies, for an aggregate amount of AS\$60,000,000, the level or breadth of our coverage may not be adequate to fully cover any potential liability claims. To date we have not been subject to any claims, or ultimately liability, in excess of the amount of our coverage. In addition, we may not be able to obtain additional professional liability coverage in the future at an acceptable cost. A successful claim or series of claims brought against us in excess of our insurance coverage and the effect of professional liability litigation upon the reputation and marketability of our technology and products, together with the diversion of the attention of key personnel, could negatively affect our business.

We use potentially hazardous materials, chemicals and patient samples in our business and any disputes relating to improper handling, storage or disposal of these materials could be time consuming and costly.

Our research and development, production and service activities involve the controlled use of hazardous laboratory materials and chemicals, including small quantities of acid and alcohol, and patient tissue samples. We do not knowingly deal with infectious samples. We, our collaborators and service providers are subject to stringent Australian federal, state and local laws and regulations governing occupational health and safety standards, including those governing the use, storage, handling and disposal of these materials and certain waste products. However, we could be liable for accidental contamination or discharge or any resultant injury from hazardous materials, and conveyance, processing, and storage of and data on patient samples. If we, our collaborators or service providers fail to comply with applicable laws or regulations, we could be required to pay penalties or be held liable for any damages that result and this liability could exceed our financial resources. Further, future changes to environmental health and safety laws could cause us to incur additional expense or restrict our operations. To date, we have not had a reportable event or serious injury.

In addition, our collaborators and service providers may be working with these same types of hazardous materials, including hazardous chemicals, in connection with our collaborations. In the event of a lawsuit or investigation, we could be held responsible for any injury caused to persons or property by exposure to, or release of, these hazardous materials or patient samples that may contain infectious materials. The cost of this liability could exceed our resources. While we maintain broadform liability insurance coverage for these risks, in the amount of up to AS\$40,000,000, the level or breadth of our coverage may not be adequate to fully cover potential liability claims. To date, we have not been subject to claims, or ultimately liability, in excess of the amount of our coverage. Our broadform insurance coverage also covers us against losses arising from an interruption of our business activities as a result of the mishandling of such materials. We also maintain workers' compensation insurance, which is mandatory in Australia, covering all of our workers in the event of injury.

We depend on the collaborative efforts of our academic and corporate partners for research, development and commercialization of some of our products. A breach by our partners of their obligations, or the termination of the relationship, could deprive us of valuable resources and require additional investment of time and money.

Our strategy for research, development and commercialization of some of our products has historically involved entering into various arrangements with academic, corporate partners and others. As a result, the success of our strategy depends, in part, upon the strength of those relationships and these outside parties undertaking their responsibilities and performing their tasks to the best of their ability and responding in a timely manner. Our collaborators may also be our competitors. We cannot necessarily control the amount and timing of resources that our collaborators devote to performing their contractual obligations and we have no certainty that these parties will perform their obligations as expected or that any revenue will be derived from these arrangements.

If our collaborators breach or terminate their agreement with us or otherwise fail to conduct their collaborative activities in a timely manner, the development or commercialization of the product candidate or research program under such collaborative arrangement may be delayed. If that is the case, we may be required to undertake unforeseen additional responsibilities or to devote unforeseen additional funds or other resources to such development or commercialization, or such development or commercialization could be terminated. The termination or cancellation of collaborative arrangements could adversely affect our financial condition, intellectual property position and general operations. In addition, disagreements between collaborators and us could lead to delays in the collaborative research, development, or commercialization of certain products or could require or result in formal legal process or arbitration for resolution. These consequences could be time-consuming and expensive and could have material adverse effects on the Company.

Other than our contractual rights under our license agreements, we may be limited in our ability to convince our licensees to fulfill their obligations. If our licensees fail to act promptly and effectively, or if a dispute arises, it could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations and the price of our ordinary shares and ADSs.

We rely upon scientific, technical and clinical data supplied by academic and corporate collaborators, licensors, licensees, independent contractors and others in the evaluation and development of potential therapeutic methods. There may be errors or omissions in this data that would materially adversely affect the development of these methods.

We may seek additional collaborative arrangements to develop and commercialize our products in the future. We may not be able to negotiate acceptable arrangements in the future and, if negotiated, we have no certainty that they will be on favorable terms or if they will be successful. In addition, our partners may pursue alternative technologies independently or in collaboration with others as a means of developing treatments for the diseases targeted by their collaborative programs with us. If any of these events occur, the progress of the Company could be adversely affected and our results of operations and financial condition could suffer.

Currently our financial results depend largely on the sales of our breast cancer risk assessment test, BREVAGen^{plus}.

For the near future, we expect to continue to derive a substantial majority of our revenues from sales of one product, our breast cancer risk test BREVAGen. We do not expect to recognize significant revenues from BREVAGen^{plus}, a second generation BREVAGen product, until increased levels of adoption and reimbursement for this test have been established. If we are unable to increase sales of BREVAGen^{plus} or successfully develop and commercialize other tests or enhancements, our ability to achieve sustained revenues and profitability would be impacted.

If our sole laboratory facility becomes inoperable, we will be unable to perform our tests and our business will be harmed.

We do not have redundant clinical reference laboratory facilities outside of Melbourne, Australia. Our current lease of laboratory premises expires August 31, 2018. The facility and the equipment we use to perform our tests would be costly to replace and could require substantial lead time to repair or replace. The facility may be harmed or rendered inoperable by natural or man-made disasters, including flooding and power outages, which may render it difficult or impossible for us to perform our tests for some period of time. The inability to perform our tests or the backlog of tests that could develop if our facility is inoperable for even a short period of time may result in the loss of customers or harm our reputation, and we may be unable to regain those customers in the future.

If we no longer had our own facility and needed to rely on a third party to perform our tests, we could only use another facility with established state licensure and Clinical Laboratory Improvements Amendments (CLIA) accreditation under the scope of which BREVAGen^{plus} tests could be performed following validation and other required procedures. We cannot assure you that we would be able to find another CLIA-certified facility willing to comply with the required procedures, that this laboratory would be willing to perform the tests on commercially reasonable terms, or that it would be able to meet our quality standards. In order to establish a redundant clinical reference laboratory facility, we would have to spend considerable time and money securing adequate space, constructing the facility, recruiting and training employees, and establishing the additional operational and administrative infrastructure necessary to support a second facility. We may not be able, or it may take considerable time, to replicate our testing processes or results in a new facility. Additionally, any new clinical reference laboratory facility would be subject to certification under CLIA and licensing by several states, including California and New York, which could take a significant amount of time and result in delays in our ability to begin operations.

The loss of key members of our senior management team or our inability to attract and retain highly skilled scientists, clinicians and salespeople could adversely affect our business.

Our success depends largely on the skills, experience and performance of key members of our executive management team and others in key management positions. The efforts of each of these persons together will be critical as we continue to develop our technologies and testing processes, continue our international expansion and transition to a company with multiple commercialized products on offer. If we were to lose one or more of these key employees, we may experience difficulties in competing effectively, developing our technologies and implementing our business strategies.

Our research and development programs and commercial laboratory operations depend on our ability to attract and retain highly skilled scientists and technicians, including licensed laboratory technicians, chemists, biostatisticians and engineers. We may not be able to attract or retain qualified scientists and technicians in the future due to the competition for qualified personnel among life science businesses. In addition, if there were to be a shortage of clinical laboratory scientists in coming years, this would make it more difficult to hire sufficient numbers of qualified personnel. We also face competition from universities and public and private research institutions in recruiting and retaining highly qualified scientific personnel. In addition, our success depends on our ability to attract and retain salespeople with extensive experience in oncology and close relationships with medical oncologists, pathologists and other hospital personnel. We may have difficulties sourcing, recruiting or retaining qualified salespeople, which could cause delays or a decline in the rate of adoption of our tests. If we are not able to attract and retain the necessary personnel to accomplish our business objectives, we may experience constraints that could adversely affect our ability to support our research and development and sales programs.

FDA regulation of LDTs may result in significant changes, and our business could be adversely impacted if we fail to adapt.

Clinical laboratory tests like ours are regulated under the CLIA, as well as by applicable state laws. Diagnostic kits that are sold and distributed through interstate commerce are regulated as medical devices by the federal Food and Drug Administration (FDA). The FDA has exercised its discretion and has not subjected most Laboratory Developed Tests, or LDTs to FDA regulation, although reagents or software provided by third parties and used to perform LDTs may be subject to regulation.

The FDA claims to have regulatory authority over LDTs under the Medical Device Amendments of 1976 and has stated in the past that it would issue guidance to the industry regarding its regulatory approach. In such discussions, the FDA has indicated that it would use a risk-based approach to regulation and would direct more resources to tests with wider distribution and with the highest risk of injury, but that it will be sensitive to the need to not adversely impact patient care or innovation. In October 2014, the FDA announced its framework and timetable for implementing this guidance. We cannot predict the ultimate timing or form of any such guidance or regulation and the potential impact on our existing tests. If adopted, such a regulatory approach by the FDA may lead to an increased regulatory burden, including additional costs and delays in introducing new tests or even continuing with our current tests. While the ultimate impact of the FDA's approach is unknown, it may be extensive and may result in significant changes. Our failure to adapt to these changes could have a material adverse effect on our business.

If the FDA decides to regulate our tests, it may require additional pre-market clinical testing prior to submitting a regulatory notification or application for commercial sales. If we are required to conduct pre-market clinical trials, whether using prospectively acquired samples or archival samples, delays in the commencement or completion of clinical testing could significantly increase our test development costs and delay commercialization of any future tests, and interrupt sales of our current tests. Many of the factors that may cause or lead to a delay in the commencement or completion of clinical trials may also ultimately lead to delay or denial of regulatory clearance or approval. The commencement of clinical trials may be delayed due to insufficient patient enrollment, which is a function of many factors, including the size of the patient population, the nature of the protocol, the proximity of patients to clinical sites and the eligibility criteria for the clinical trial.

We may find it necessary to engage contract research organizations to perform data collection and analysis and other aspects of our clinical trials, which might increase the cost and complexity of our trials. We may also depend on clinical investigators, medical institutions and contract research organizations to perform the trials. If these parties do not successfully carry out their contractual duties or obligations or meet expected deadlines, or if the quality, completeness or accuracy of the clinical data they obtain is compromised due to the failure to adhere to our clinical protocols or for other reasons, our clinical trials may have to be extended, delayed or terminated. Many of these factors would be beyond our control. We may not be able to enter into replacement arrangements without undue delays or considerable expenditures. If there are delays in testing or approvals as a result of the failure to perform by third parties, our research and development costs would increase, and we may not be able to obtain regulatory clearance or approval for our tests. In addition, we may not be able to establish or maintain relationships with these parties on favorable terms, if at all. Each of these outcomes would harm our ability to market our tests, or to achieve sustained profitability.

Even if the clinical trials are timely completed, there is no assurance that the results of those trials will be sufficient to support regulatory clearance or approval for the intended indications. Failure of the clinical data to support an intended use of given LDT would likely have an adverse impact on the Company.

Our business could be harmed from the loss or suspension of a license or imposition of a fine or penalties under, or future changes in, or changing interpretations of, CLIA or state laboratory licensing laws to which we are subject.

The clinical laboratory testing industry is subject to extensive federal and state regulation, and many of these statutes and regulations have not been interpreted by the courts. The regulations implementing CLIA set out federal regulatory standards that apply to virtually all clinical laboratories (regardless of the location, size or type of laboratory), including those operated by physicians in their offices, by requiring that they be certified by the federal government or by a federally approved accreditation agency. CLIA does not preempt state law, which in some cases may be more stringent than federal law and require additional personnel qualifications, quality control, record maintenance and proficiency testing. The sanction for failure to comply with CLIA and state requirements may be suspension, revocation or limitation of a laboratory’s CLIA certificate, which is necessary to conduct business, as well as significant fines and/or criminal penalties. Several states have similar laws and we may be subject to similar penalties. If the certification of one laboratory owned by the Company is suspended or revoked that may preclude the Company from owning or operating any other laboratory in the Country for two years.

We cannot assure you that applicable statutes and regulations and more specifically, the Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, will not be interpreted or applied by a prosecutorial, regulatory or judicial authority in a manner that would adversely affect our business. Potential sanctions for violation of these statutes and regulations include significant fines and the suspension or loss of various licenses, certificates and authorizations, which could have a material adverse effect on our business. In addition, compliance with future legislation could impose additional requirements on us, which may be costly.

Failure to establish, and perform to, appropriate quality standards to assure that the highest level of quality is observed in the performance of our testing services and in the design, manufacture and marketing of our products could adversely affect the results of our operations and adversely impact our reputation.

The provision of clinical testing services, and the design, manufacture and marketing of diagnostic products involve certain inherent risks. The services that we provide and the products that we design, manufacture and market are intended to provide information for healthcare providers in providing patient care. Therefore, users of our services and products may have a greater sensitivity to errors than the users of services or products that are intended for other purposes.

Similarly, negligence in performing our services can lead to injury or other adverse events. We may be sued under common law, physician liability or other liability law for acts or omissions by our laboratory personnel. We are subject to the attendant risk of substantial damages awards and risk to our reputation.

Failure to comply with complex federal and state laws and regulations related to submission of claims for clinical laboratory services could result in significant monetary damages and penalties and exclusion from the Medicare and Medicaid programs.

We are subject to extensive federal and state laws and regulations relating to the submission of claims for payment for clinical laboratory services, including those that relate to coverage of our services under Medicare, Medicaid and other governmental health care programs, the amounts that may be billed for our services and to whom claims for services may be submitted. In addition, we are subject to various laws regulating our interactions with other healthcare providers and with patients, such as the Anti-Kickback Statute, the Anti-Inducement Statute, and the Ethics in Patient Referrals Act of 1989, commonly referred to as the Stark law. These laws are complicated.

Our failure to comply with applicable laws and regulations could result in our inability to receive payment for our services or result in attempts by third-party payers, such as Medicare and Medicaid, to recover payments from us that have already been made. Submission of claims in violation of certain statutory or regulatory requirements can result in penalties, including substantial civil penalties for each item or service billed to Medicare in violation of the legal requirement, and exclusion from participation in Medicare, Medicaid and other federal health care programs. Government authorities or whistleblowers may also assert that violations of laws and regulations related to submission or causing the submission of claims violate the federal False Claims Act, or FCA, or other laws related to fraud and abuse, including submission of claims for services that were not medically necessary. Violations of the FCA could result in significant economic liability. The FCA provides that all damages are trebled, and each false claim submitted is subject to a penalty of up to \$21,563 for violations occurring after November 2, 2015 and \$11,000 for violations occurring before November 2, 2015. For example, we could be subject to FCA liability if it were determined that the services we provided were not medically necessary and not reimbursable or if it were determined that we improperly paid physicians who referred patients to our laboratory. It is also possible that the government could attempt to hold us liable under fraud and abuse laws for improper claims submitted by an entity for services that we performed if we were found to have knowingly participated in the arrangement that resulted in submission of the improper claims.

Failure to comply with HIPAA, including regarding the use of new “standard transactions,” may negatively impact our profitability and cash flows.

Pursuant to the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, as amended, or HIPAA, we must comply with comprehensive privacy and security standards with respect to the use and disclosure of protected health information, as well as standards for electronic transactions, including specified transaction and code set rules. Under the 2009 HITECH amendments to HIPAA, the law was expanded, including requirements to provide notification of certain identified data breaches, direct patient access to laboratory records, the extension of certain HIPAA privacy and security standards directly to business associates, and heightened penalties for noncompliance, and enforcement efforts.

In addition, HIPAA not only seeks to ensure patient privacy, but also requires providers that bill electronically to do so using standard code sets. These HIPAA transaction standards are complex, and subject to differences in interpretation by payers. For instance, some payers may interpret the standards to require us to provide certain types of information, including demographic information not usually provided to us by physicians. As a result of inconsistent application of transaction standards by payers or our inability to obtain certain billing information not usually provided to us by physicians, we could face increased costs and complexity, a temporary disruption in receipts and ongoing reductions in the timeliness of reimbursement. In addition, new requirements for additional standard transactions, such as claims attachments, Version 5010 of the HIPAA Transaction Standards and the ICD-10-CM Code Set, could prove technically difficult, time-consuming or expensive to implement.

Complying with numerous regulations pertaining to our business is an expensive and time-consuming process, and any failure to comply could result in substantial penalties.

The clinical laboratory testing industry is highly regulated and there can be no assurance that the regulatory environment in which we operate will not change significantly and adversely in the future. Areas of the regulatory environment that may affect our ability to conduct business include, without limitation:

- federal and state laws applicable to billing and claims payment;
- federal and state laboratory anti-mark-up laws;
- federal and state anti-kickback laws;
- federal and state false claims laws;
- federal self-referral and financial inducement prohibition laws, commonly known as the Stark Law, and the state equivalents;
- federal and state laws governing laboratory licensing and testing, including CLIA;
- federal and state laws governing the LDTs;
- HIPAA, along with the revisions to HIPPA as a result of the HITECH Act, and analogous state laws;
- federal, state and foreign regulation of privacy, security, electronic transactions and identity theft;
- federal, state and local laws governing the handling, transportation and disposal of medical and hazardous waste;
- Occupational Safety and Health Administration rules and regulations;
- changes to laws, regulations and rules as a result of the Health Care Reform Law; and
- changes to other federal, state and local laws, regulations and rules, including tax laws.

We have adopted policies and procedures designed to comply with these laws. In the ordinary course of business, there is an ongoing awareness of the importance of compliance with these laws. The growth of our business and sales organization may increase the potential for violating these laws or our internal policies and procedures, despite our ongoing vigilance in maintaining and updating our compliance procedures. The risk of being found in violation of these or other laws and regulations is further increased by the fact that many of them are extremely complex and in many instances, there are no significant regulatory or judicial interpretations of these laws and regulations. Any action brought against us for violation of these or other laws or regulations, even if we successfully defend against it, could cause us to incur significant legal expenses and divert management’s attention. Any determination that we have violated these laws or regulations, or a public announcement that we are being investigated for possible violations of these laws or regulations, could harm our reputation, operating results and financial condition. If our operations are found to be in violation of any of these laws and regulations, we may be subject to any applicable penalty associated with the violation, including civil and criminal penalties, damages and fines, we could be required to refund payments received by us, and we could be required to curtail or cease our operations. In addition, a significant change in any of these laws or regulations may require us to change our business model in order to maintain compliance with these laws or regulations, which could harm our operating results and financial condition.

A failure to comply with any of federal or state laws applicable to our business, particularly laws related to the elimination of healthcare fraud, may adversely impact our business.

Federal officials responsible for administering and enforcing the healthcare laws and regulations have made a priority of eliminating healthcare fraud. For example, the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, as amended by the Health Care Education and Reconciliation Act of 2010, jointly the “Affordable Care Act,” includes significant new fraud and abuse measures, including required disclosures of financial arrangements between drug and device manufacturers, on the one hand, and physicians and teaching hospitals, on the other hand. Federal funding available for combating health care fraud and abuse generally has increased. While we seek to conduct our business in compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, many of the laws and regulations applicable to our business, particularly those relating to billing and reimbursement of tests and those relating to relationships with physicians, hospitals and patients, contain language that has not been interpreted by courts. We must rely on our interpretation of these laws and regulations based on the advice of our counsel and regulatory or law enforcement authorities may not agree with our interpretation of these laws and regulations and may seek to enforce legal remedies or penalties against us for violations. From time to time we may need to change our operations, particularly pricing or billing practices, in response to changing interpretations of these laws and regulations or regulatory or judicial determinations with respect to these laws and regulations. These occurrences, regardless of their outcome, could damage our reputation and harm important business relationships that we have with healthcare providers, payers and others. Furthermore, if a regulatory or judicial authority finds that we have not complied with applicable laws and regulations, we could be required to refund amounts that were billed and collected in violation of such laws and regulations. In addition, we may voluntarily refund amounts that were alleged to have been billed and collected in violation of applicable laws and regulations. In either case, we could suffer civil and criminal damages, fines and penalties, exclusion from participation in governmental healthcare programs and the loss of licenses, certificates and authorizations necessary to operate our business, as well as incur liabilities from third-party claims, all of which could harm our operating results and financial condition. Moreover, regardless of the outcome, if we or physicians or other third parties with whom we do business are investigated by a regulatory or law enforcement authority we could incur substantial costs, including legal fees, and our management may be required to divert a substantial amount of time to an investigation.

To enhance compliance with applicable health care laws, and mitigate potential liability in the event of noncompliance, regulatory authorities, such as the United States Department of Health and Human Services’ Office of Inspector General, or OIG, have recommended the adoption and implementation of a comprehensive health care compliance program that generally contains the elements of an effective compliance and ethics program described in Section 8B2.1 of the United States Sentencing Commission Guidelines Manual, and for many years the OIG has made available a model compliance program targeted to the clinical laboratory industry. In addition, certain states, such as New York, require that health care providers, such as clinical laboratories, that engage in substantial business under the state Medicaid program have a compliance program that generally adheres to the standards set forth in the Model Compliance Program. Also, under the Affordable Care Act, the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, or HHS, will require suppliers, such as the Company, to adopt, as a condition of Medicare participation, compliance programs that meet a core set of requirements.

Failure to maintain the security of patient-related information or compliance with security requirements could damage our reputation with customers, cause us to incur substantial additional costs and become subject to litigation.

Pursuant to HIPAA, and certain similar state laws, we must comply with comprehensive privacy and security standards with respect to the use and disclosure of protected health information. Under the HITECH amendments to HIPAA, HIPAA was expanded to require certain data breach notification, to extend certain HIPAA privacy and security standards directly to business associates, to heighten penalties for noncompliance, and enhance enforcement efforts.

We receive certain personal and financial information about our clients and their patients. In addition, we rely heavily on communications and information systems to conduct our business. Our operations depend heavily upon the secure transmission of confidential information over public networks. We are transitioning our products’ commercial program to an ecommerce based solution, which places our assets, customer data and other personally identifiable data at higher risks. We are making investments to ensure that our employees are aware of cyber security risks facing the Company and how to prevent data breaches. A compromise in our security systems that results in client or patient personal information being obtained by unauthorized persons or our failure to comply with security requirements for financial transactions could adversely affect our reputation with our clients and result in litigation against us or the imposition of penalties, all of which may adversely affect our operations, financial condition and liquidity. Although we are not aware of the occurrence of any data beaches, we continue to update our cyber security tools and processes in an attempt to keep pace with evolving cyber security risks.

Changes in regulation and policies, including increasing downward pressure on health care reimbursement, may adversely affect reimbursement for diagnostic services and could have a material adverse impact on our business.

Reimbursement levels for health care services are subject to continuous and often unexpected changes, and we face a variety of efforts by government payers to reduce utilization and reimbursement for diagnostic testing services. Changes in governmental reimbursement may result from statutory and regulatory changes, retroactive rate adjustments, administrative rulings, competitive bidding initiatives, or other policy changes.

[Table of Contents](#)

The U.S. Congress has considered, at least yearly in conjunction with budgetary legislation, changes to one or both of the Medicare fee schedules under which we receive reimbursement, which include the clinical laboratory fee schedule for our clinical laboratory services. For example, Congress has periodically considered imposing a 20 percent coinsurance on laboratory services. If enacted, this would require us to attempt to collect this amount from patients, although in many cases the costs of collection would exceed the amount actually received.

The CMS pays laboratories on the basis of a fee schedule that is reviewed and re-calculated on an annual basis. CMS may change the fee schedule upward or downward on billing codes that we submit for reimbursement on a regular basis. Our revenue and business may be adversely affected if the reimbursement rates associated with such codes are reduced. Even when reimbursement rates are not reduced, policy changes add to our costs by increasing the complexity and volume of administrative requirements. Medicaid reimbursement, which varies by state, is also subject to administrative and billing requirements and budget pressures. Recently, state budget pressures have caused states to consider several policy changes that may impact our financial condition and results of operations, such as delaying payments, reducing reimbursement, restricting coverage eligibility and service coverage, and imposing taxes on our services.

The transition to a direct self-pay program in April 2017 may reduce the reimbursement risks by placing the responsibility for payment purely with the patient, although overall market adoption and revenue generation may be adversely affected.

Healthcare policy changes, including recently enacted legislation reforming the U.S. healthcare system, may have a material adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations.

Fees for most laboratory services reimbursed by Medicare are established in the Clinical Laboratory Fee Schedule (CLFS), and fees for other testing reimbursed by Medicare, primarily related to pathology, are covered by the Physician Fee Schedule (PFS). Over the past several years, the Company has experienced governmental pay reductions as a direct result of the Affordable Care Act (ACA), the Medicare Access and CHIP Reauthorization Act of 2015 (MACRA) and the Achieving a Better Life Experience Act of 2014 (ABLE Act). In addition, the Protecting Access to Medicare Act (PAMA), which became law on April 1, 2014, is expected to result in a future net reduction in reimbursement revenue under the CLFS. These laws include provisions designed to control healthcare expenses reimbursed by government programs through a combination of reductions to fee schedules, incentives to providers to participate in alternative payment models such as risk-sharing and new methods to establish and adjust fees.

The Affordable Care Act makes changes that are expected to significantly affect clinical laboratories, among others. Beginning in 2013, each medical device manufacturer must pay a sales tax (medical device excise tax “MDET”) in an amount equal to 2.3% of the price for which such manufacturer sells its medical devices that are listed with the FDA. The Consolidated Appropriations Act, 2016 (Dec. 18, 2015) imposed a two-year moratorium on this medical device tax so it would not apply to the sale of a taxable medical device by the manufacturer, producer, or importer of the device during the period beginning on Jan. 1, 2016, and ending on Dec. 31, 2017. Repeal of the MDET was included in the House passed American Health Care Act of 2017 and the Senate’s Better Care Reconciliation Act released on July 13, 2017; however, the Senate has thus far failed to pass its bill to repeal and replace the Affordable Care Act. The moratorium has subsequently on January 22, 2018 been extended for a further period of 2 years. Unless additional action is taken, the MDET will be reinstated on January 1, 2020. The medical device industry has garnered significant support for the permanent repeal of the MDET. It is likely that advocates will continue to push Congress to consider legislation to repeal the MDET before it is reinstated.

Although the FDA has contended that LDTs are medical devices, none of our products is currently listed with the FDA. We cannot assure you that the tax, once the moratorium sunsets, will not be extended to services such as ours in the future. The Affordable Care Act also mandates a reduction in payments for clinical laboratory services paid under the Medicare Clinical Laboratory Fee Schedule, or CLFS, of 1.75% through 2015 and a productivity adjustment to the CLFS. Moreover, under Protecting Access to Medicare Act, CMS will be required to set and make adjustments to the CLFS using market-based information that reflects the scope of prices paid across the laboratory industry. On October 1, 2015, CMS issued a proposed rule to implement PAMA that would require applicable laboratories, including the Company, to begin reporting their test-specific private payer payment amounts to CMS during the first quarter of 2016. CMS intends to use that private market data to calculate weighted median prices for each test (based on applicable CPT codes) that would represent the new CLFS rates beginning in 2017, subject to certain phase-in limits. For 2017-2019, a test price cannot be reduced by more than 10.0% per year; for 2020-2022, a test price cannot be reduced by more than 15.0% per year. Reporting and pricing will occur every three years, or annually with respect to certain types of tests, to update the CLFS thereafter.

Other significant measures contained in the Affordable Care Act includes, for example, coordination and promotion of research on comparative clinical effectiveness of different technologies and procedures, initiatives to revise Medicare payment methodologies, such as bundling of payments across the continuum of care by providers and physicians, and initiatives to promote quality indicators in payment methodologies. The Affordable Care Act also includes significant new fraud and abuse measures, including required

disclosures by drug and device manufacturers and distributors of financial arrangements with physicians and teaching hospitals. In addition, the Health Care Reform Law establishes an Independent Payment Advisory Board, or IPAB, to reduce the per capita rate of growth in Medicare spending. The IPAB has broad discretion to propose policies to reduce expenditures, which may have a negative impact on payment rates for services. The IPAB proposals may impact payments for clinical laboratory services beginning in 2016. We are monitoring the impact of the Health Care Reform Law in order to enable us to determine the trends and changes that may be necessitated by the legislation that may potentially impact on our business over time.

In addition to the Affordable Care Act, various healthcare reform proposals have also emerged from federal and state governments. For example, in February 2012, Congress passed the “Middle Class Tax Relief and Job Creation Act of 2012” which in part reduced the potential future cost-based increases to the Medicare Clinical Laboratory Fee Schedule by 2%. Overall the expected total fee cut to the CLFS for 2013 was 2.95% not including a further reduction of 2% from implementation of the automatic expense reductions (sequester) under the Budget Control Act of 2011 which went into effect for dates of service on or after April 1, 2013. Reductions made by the Congressional sequester are applied to total claims payments made. While these reductions did not result in a rebasing of the negotiated or established Medicare or Medicaid reimbursement rates, rebasing could occur as a result of future legislation. In 2015, the total fee cut to the CLFS was 0.25%.

We may also be subject to the U.S. federal Physician Payments Sunshine Act and various state laws on reporting remunerative relationships with healthcare customers. These laws impact the kinds of financial arrangements we may have with hospitals, surgeons or other potential purchasers of our products. They particularly impact how we structure our sales offerings, including discount practices, customer support, education and training programs, physician consulting, research grants and other arrangements. These laws are administered by, among others, the U.S. Department of Justice, the Office of Inspector General of the Department of Health and Human Services and state attorneys general. Many of these agencies have increased their enforcement activities with respect to medical device manufacturers in recent years. If our operations are found to be in violation of these laws, we may be subject to penalties, including potentially significant criminal, civil and/or administrative penalties, damages, fines, disgorgement, exclusion from participation in government healthcare programs, contractual damages, reputational harm, administrative burdens, diminished profits and future earnings, and the curtailment or restructuring of our operations.

On June 23, 2016, the CMS published a final rule implementing PAMA, which required establishment of a new Medicare reimbursement system for clinical lab tests paid under the CLFS, based on private payer rates, as reported to CMS. Although the new payment system was supposed to go into effect for tests furnished after January 1, 2017, the CMS rulemaking process was delayed, and the new rates will not be effective until January 1, 2018 pursuant to the final rule. Under the new system the Company must collect data on private payer rates and report the data to CMS every three years for most types of tests. The Company does not expect that the new reporting requirements will have a material impact on its business or results of operations. CMS will use the data reported by all applicable labs to calculate a weighted median of private payer rates for each test performed, and that weighted median will be the new Medicare rate. Rate reductions for existing tests under the new system will be phased in over six years. The public comment period on the preliminary private payor rate based CLFS payment amounts will close on October 23, 2017 after which CMS will make available final CY 2018 CLFS rates on the CMS website for a January 1, 2018 implementation. The Company is still assessing the full impact of the final rule, but has been preparing for it for some time.

We cannot be certain that these or future changes will not affect payment rates in the future. We also cannot predict whether future healthcare initiatives will be implemented at the federal or state level, or the effect any future legislation or regulation will have on us. The taxes imposed by the new federal legislation, cost reduction measures and the expansion in government’s role in the U.S. healthcare industry may result in decreased profits to us, lower reimbursements by payers for our products or reduced medical procedure volumes, all of which may adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Healthcare plans have taken steps to control the utilization and reimbursement of healthcare services, including clinical test services.

We also face efforts by non-governmental third-party payers, including healthcare plans, to reduce utilization and reimbursement for clinical testing services.

The healthcare industry has experienced a trend of consolidation among healthcare insurance plans, resulting in fewer but larger insurance plans with significant bargaining power to negotiate fee arrangements with healthcare providers, including clinical testing providers. These healthcare plans, and independent physician associations, may demand that clinical testing providers accept discounted fee structures or assume all or a portion of the financial risk associated with providing testing services to their members through capped payment arrangements. In addition, some healthcare plans have been willing to limit the PPO or POS laboratory network to only a single

[Table of Contents](#)

national laboratory to obtain improved fee-for-service pricing. There are also an increasing number of patients enrolling in consumer driven products and high deductible plans that involve greater patient cost-sharing.

The increased consolidation among healthcare plans also has increased the potential adverse impact of ceasing to be a contracted provider with any such insurer. Sales volumes and prices of our products depend in large part on the availability of coverage and reimbursement from third-party payors. Third-party payors include governmental programs such as U.S. Medicare and Medicaid, private insurance plans, and workers’ compensation plans. These third-party payors may deny coverage or reimbursement for a product or procedure if they determine that the product or procedure was not medically appropriate or necessary. Even though a new product may have been cleared for commercial distribution by relevant regulatory authorities, we may find limited demand for the product until reimbursement approval is assured from multiple governmental and private third-party payors. In the United States, a uniform policy of coverage does not exist across all third-party payors relative to payment of claims for all products. Therefore, coverage and payment can be quite different from payor to payor, and from one region of the country to another. This is also true for foreign countries in that coverage and payment systems vary from country to country.

Third-party payors are developing increasingly sophisticated methods of controlling healthcare costs through more cost-effective methods of delivering healthcare. All of these types of programs can potentially impact market access for, and pricing structures of our products, which in turn, can impact our future sales. There can be no assurance that third-party reimbursement will be available or adequate, or that current and future legislation, regulation or reimbursement policies of third-party payors will not adversely affect the demand for our products or our ability to sell our products on a profitable basis. The unavailability or inadequacy of third-party payor reimbursement could have a material adverse effect on our business, operating results, and financial condition.

Outside the United States, reimbursement and healthcare payment systems vary significantly by country, and many countries have instituted price ceilings on specific product lines and procedures. There can be no assurances that procedures using our products will be considered medically reasonable and necessary for a specific indication, that our products will be considered cost-effective by third-party payors, that an adequate level of reimbursement will be available, or that the third-party payors’ reimbursement policies will not adversely affect our ability to sell our products profitably.

We expect continuing efforts to reduce reimbursements, to impose more stringent cost controls and to reduce utilization of clinical test services. These efforts, including future changes in third-party payer rules, practices and policies, or ceasing to be a contracted provider to a healthcare plan, may have a material adverse effect on our business.

Government regulation of genetic research or testing may adversely affect the demand for our services and impair our business and operations.

In addition to the regulatory framework governing healthcare, genetic research and testing has been the focus of public attention and regulatory scrutiny. From time to time, federal, state and/or local governments adopt regulations relating to the conduct of genetic research and genetic testing. In the future, these regulations could limit or restrict genetic research activities as well as genetic testing for research or clinical purposes. In addition, if such regulations are adopted, these regulations may be inconsistent with, or in conflict with, regulations adopted by other government bodies. Regulations relating to genetic research activities could adversely affect our ability to conduct our research and development activities. Regulations restricting genetic testing could adversely affect our ability to market and sell our products and services. Accordingly, any regulations of this nature could increase the costs of our operations or restrict our ability to conduct our testing business and might adversely affect our operations and financial condition.

Our operations may be adversely affected by the effects of extreme weather conditions or other interruptions in the timely transportation of specimens.

We transport specimens from our North Carolina offices in the U.S. to our laboratory located in Melbourne, Australia. Our operations may be adversely impacted by extreme weather conditions or other interruptions in the timely transportation of such specimens or otherwise to provide our services, from time to time. The occurrence of any such event and/or a disruption to our operations as a result may harm our reputation and adversely impact our results of operations.

Failure in our information technology systems could significantly increase testing turn-around times or impact on the billing processes or otherwise disrupt our operations.

Our laboratory operations depend, in part, on the continued performance of our information technology systems. Our information technology systems are potentially vulnerable to physical or electronic break-ins, computer viruses and similar disruptions. Sustained system failures or interruption of our systems in our laboratory operations could disrupt our ability to process laboratory requisitions, perform testing, and provide test results in a timely manner and/or billing process. Breaches with respect to protected health information

could result in violations of HIPAA and analogous state laws, and risk the imposition of significant fines and penalties. Failure of our information technology systems could adversely affect our reputation, business, profitability and financial condition.

Breaches of network or information technology, natural disasters or terrorist attacks could have an adverse impact on our business

Cyber-attacks or other breaches of information technology security, natural disasters, or acts of terrorism or war may result in hardware failure or disrupt our product testing or research and development activities. There has been a substantial increase in frequency of successful and unsuccessful cyber-attacks on companies in recent years. Such an event may result in our inability, or the inability of our collaborative partners, to operate the facilities to conduct and complete the necessary activities. which even if the event is for a limited period of time, may result in significant expenses and/ or significant damage or delay to our commercial or research activities. While we maintain insurance cover for some of these events, the potential liabilities associated with these events could exceeded the cover we maintain. We are likely to be subject to attempts to breach the security of our networks and information technology infrastructure through cyber-attack, malware, computer viruses or other means of unauthorized access. To date however, we have not been subject to any cyber incidents which individually or in aggregate have resulted in a material impact to our operations or financial condition.

Failure to demonstrate the clinical utility of our products could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations.

In order to assure adequate insurance coverage and favorable insurance reimbursement of our products, we have been required to demonstrate the clinical utility of our tests. Clinical utility—which is the usefulness of a test for clinical practice (as contrasted with diagnostic accuracy, which is how well the test can determine the presence, absence, or risk of a specific disease)—may well be the most significant limitation for the widespread acceptance of molecular diagnostic tools such as BREVAGen*plus*. These studies have required us to invest considerable financial and management resources without any assurance of favorable results. Successful studies are difficult to plan, execute and validate, because of the time involved and variables that are difficult to control and which can impact outcomes. If we are unable to demonstrate clinical utility, or if our data is deemed insufficient to validate utility, which are required for Medicare coverage, then we may face negative coverage decisions for our products. The resulting negative coverage decisions could have a material adverse effect on our financial conditions and results of operations.

With the change in our pricing and billing model effective April 1, 2017, to a direct patient self-pay model, this requirement has currently become redundant. We recognize, however that scientific papers are an essential marketing tool and that scientific and clinical data are key drivers in commercial adoption. We intend to explore opportunities to engage in further research collaborations to support clinical utility.

Ethical and other concerns surrounding the use of genetic information may reduce the demand for our services.

Public opinion regarding ethical issues related to the confidentiality and appropriate use of genetic testing may influence government authorities to call for limits on, or regulation of the use of, genetic testing. In addition, such authorities could prohibit testing for genetic predisposition to certain conditions, particularly for those that have no known cure. Furthermore, adverse publicity or public opinion relating to genetic research and testing, even in the absence of any governmental regulation, could reduce the potential markets for our services, which could materially and adversely affect our financial position.

We do not however undertake any activities in the contentious areas of cloning, stem cell research or other gene-altering areas. As such, many of the ethical issues that may be relevant to other participants in the genetics industry are not necessarily applicable to us.

Risks associated with Out-licensing of our intellectual property

The patenting of genes and issues surrounding access to genetic knowledge are the subjects of extensive and ongoing public debate in many countries. By way of example, the Australian Law Reform Commission has previously conducted two inquiries into the social uses of genetic information. The patents we hold over uses of “non-coding” DNA have broad scope and have also been the subject of debate and some criticism in the media. Individuals or organizations, in any one of the countries in which these patents have issued, could take legal action to seek their amendment, revocation or invalidation, something which has happened previously, on several occasions in various jurisdictions, though we have prevailed in all such cases.

Furthermore, any time that we initiate legal action against parties that infringe our patents we face a risk that the infringer will defend itself through a counter-claim of patent invalidity or other such claims. Subsequent legal action could potentially overturn, invalidate or limit the scope of our patents.

We rely heavily upon patents and proprietary technology that may fail to protect our business.

We rely upon our portfolio of patent rights, patent applications and exclusive licenses to patents and patent applications relating to genetic technologies. We expect to aggressively patent and protect our proprietary technologies. However, we cannot be certain that any additional patents will be issued to us as a result of our domestic or foreign patent applications or that any of our patents will withstand challenges by others. Patents issued to, or licensed by us may be infringed or third parties may independently develop the same or similar technologies. Similarly, our patents may not provide us with meaningful protection from competitors, including those who may pursue patents which may prevent, limit or interfere with our products or which may require licensing and the payment of significant fees or royalties by us to such third parties in order to enable us to conduct our business. We may sue or be sued by third parties regarding our patents and other intellectual property rights. These suits are often costly and would divert valuable funds, time and technical resources from our operations and cause a distraction to management.

We may face difficulties in certain jurisdictions in protecting our intellectual property rights, which may diminish the value of our intellectual property rights in those jurisdictions.

The laws of some jurisdictions do not protect intellectual property rights to the same extent as the laws in the United States and the European Union, and many companies have encountered significant difficulties in protecting and defending such rights in such jurisdictions. If we or our collaboration partners encounter difficulties in protecting, or are otherwise precluded from effectively protecting, the intellectual property rights for our business in such jurisdictions, the value of those rights may be diminished and we may face additional competition from others in those jurisdictions.

In addition, many countries limit the enforceability of patents against governments agencies or government contractors. In those countries, the patent owner may have limited remedies, which could materially diminish the value of such patent.

Item 4. Information on the Company

Item 4.A History and Development of the Company

Originally incorporated under the laws of Western Australia on January 5, 1987 as Concord Mining N.L. the Company operated as a mining company. On August 13, 1991, we changed our name to Consolidated Victorian Gold Mines N.L. On December 2, 1991, we changed our name to Consolidated Victorian Mines N.L. On March 15, 1995, we changed our name to Duketon Goldfields N.L.

On October 15, 1999, the Company’s corporate status was changed from a No Liability Company to a company limited by shares. On August 29, 2000, following the acquisition of Swiss company GeneType AG, we changed our name to Genetic Technologies Limited, which is our current name. At that time, the mining activities were phased out to focus on becoming a biotechnology company, following which our stock exchange listing was duly transferred from the mining board of the ASX to the industrial board and our shares were thereafter classified under the industry group “Health and Biotechnology”, completing our transformation from a mining company into a biotechnology company. Our current activities in biotechnology primarily concentrate on one clearly defined area of activity which is covered under Item 4.B “Business Overview”.

In October 2009, a new strategic direction was established to focus efforts in creating a portfolio of tests that would be aimed at assisting medical clinicians with cancer management. This would comprise tests that were created by the Company and in-licensed from third parties which would then be marketed by Genetic Technologies in the Asia-Pacific region.

On April 14, 2010, we announced that we had acquired certain assets from Perlegen Sciences, Inc. in California, with the main asset being the BREVAGen™ breast cancer risk assessment test (“BREVAGen™”). In addition to the BREVAGen™ test, we also acquired a suite of patents valid to 2022 which augment and extend our current non-coding patent portfolio. On June 28, 2010, we incorporated a wholly-owned subsidiary named Phenogen Sciences Inc. in the State of Delaware which commenced selling the BREVAGen™ test in the U.S. marketplace in June 2011. In October 2014, the Company released its next generation breast cancer risk assessment test BREVAGenplus®.

During 2014, the Directors considered an offer by Specialist Diagnostic Services Ltd (SDS), the wholly owned pathology subsidiary of Primary Health Care Ltd., to purchase the assets of the Australian Genetic testing business, which included Paternity, Forensics, Animal and Medical testing for the ANZ region. In September 2014, the Company signed a binding Sale and Purchase Agreement with SDS.

[Table of Contents](#)

On November 19, 2014, the Company completed the sale of its Heritage Australian Genetics business to SDS.

As part of the Company’s strategy to focus on the expansion of its cancer diagnostic franchise, we continue to evaluate opportunities to sell, out-license or co-develop other assets and technologies in which we have an interest.

In line with this strategy, in November 2016, the Company executed an exclusive worldwide license agreement with The University of Melbourne, for the development and commercialization of a novel colorectal cancer (CRC) risk assessment test, providing the Company with an opportunity to enhance its pipeline of risk assessment products. Additionally, in June 2017, the Company executed an investigator initiated Research Agreement with The Ohio State University, reflecting the growing awareness of the Company’s expertise in SNP-based risk assessment.

During the current financial year, the Company executed a further Collaborative research & services agreement with The University of Melbourne, with the research designed to broaden the applicability of BREVAGen^{plus}®, enabling its use by women with extended family history of breast cancer as well as increase the range of factors analyzed in assessing breast cancer. In addition., the Company has commenced development of a pipeline of other cancer and disease target tests for its predictive technologies, initially focusing on:

- Prostate cancer
- Melanoma
- Type 2 Diabetes
- Cardiovascular disease

On February 15, 2018, following changes to composition of the majority of the Board on January 31, 2018, the Company announced that it had entered into a non-binding terms sheet with Blockchain Global Limited (BCG) with the objective of providing a framework for entering into a strategic alliance with BCG to explore potential medical and biotech blockchain applications to provide efficiencies and new opportunities leveraging off the Company’s existing genomics business and BCG’s extensive blockchain application experience. This collaboration has subsequently (August 2, 2018) been formalized through a framework agreement.

Corporate Information

Our registered office, headquarters and laboratory is located at 60-66 Hanover Street, Fitzroy, Victoria, 3065, Australia and our telephone number is +-61 3 8412 7000. The offices of our U.S. subsidiary, Phenogen Sciences Inc., are located at 1300 Baxter Street, Suite 157, Charlotte, North Carolina, 28269 U.S.A. The telephone number for the Phenogen Sciences office is (877) 992 7382. Our website address is www.gtglabs.com. The information in our website is not incorporated by reference into this Annual Report and should not be considered as part of this Annual Report.

Our Australian Company Number (ACN) is 009 212 328. Our Australian Business Number (ABN) is 17 009 212 328. We operate pursuant to our constitution, the Australian *Corporations Act 2001*, the Listing Rules of the Australian Securities Exchange, the Marketplace Rules of NASDAQ and, where applicable, local, state and federal legislation in the countries in which we operate.

Item 4.B Business Overview

Description of our Business

Founded in 1989, Genetic Technologies Listed on the ASX (GTG) in 2000 and NASDAQ (GENE) in 2005, Genetic Technologies is today a molecular diagnostics company that offers predictive testing and assessment tools to help physicians proactively manage women’s health. The Company’s lead product, BREVAGen^{plus}, is a clinically validated risk assessment test for non-hereditary breast cancer and is first in its class. BREVAGen^{plus} improves upon the predictive power of the first generation BREVAGen test and is designed to facilitate better informed decisions about breast cancer screening and preventive treatment plans. BREVAGen^{plus} expands the application of BREVAGen from Caucasian women to include African-Americans and Hispanics, and is directed towards women aged 35 years or above, who have not had breast cancer and have one or more risk factors for developing breast cancer.

The Company has successfully launched the first generation BREVAGen test across the U.S. via its U.S. subsidiary Phenogen Sciences Inc. and the addition of BREVAGen^{plus}, launched in October 2014, significantly expands the applicable market. The Company markets BREVAGen^{plus} to healthcare professionals in comprehensive breast health care and imaging centers, as well as to obstetricians/gynecologists (OBGYNs) and breast cancer risk assessment specialists (such as breast surgeons).

The Genetic Testing Business

Following the acquisition of Genetype AG in 1999 and the subsequent renaming to Genetic Technologies Limited, the Company focused on establishing a genetic testing business, which over the following decade saw it become the largest provider of paternity and related testing services in Australia. The Company’s service testing laboratory in Melbourne became the leading non-Government genetic testing service provider in Australia. The genetic testing services of the Company expanded to include at certain times:

- *Medical testing*
- *Animal Testing*
- *Forensic Testing*
- *Plant Testing*

The acquisition of GeneType AG also provided the Company with ownership rights to a potentially significant portfolio of issued patents. During the intervening years, this portfolio has since been expanded by both organic growth and the acquisition of intellectual property assets from third parties. The patent portfolio is constantly reviewed to ensure that we maintain potentially important patents but at the same time keep costs to a minimum by no longer pursuing less commercially attractive and relevant intellectual property.

A strategic alliance with Myriad Genetics Inc. delivered to the Company exclusive rights in Australia and New Zealand to perform DNA testing for susceptibility to a range of cancers. In April 2003, we established our cancer susceptibility testing facility within our Australian laboratory. In June 2003, this facility was granted provisional accreditation by the National Association of Testing Authorities, Australia (“NATA”).

In November 2003, the Company joined the world-wide genetic testing network GENDIA as the sole reference laboratory for the network in Australia and New Zealand. GENDIA consists of more than 50 laboratories from around the world, each contributing expertise in their respective disciplines to create a network capable of providing more than 2,000 different genetic tests. This provided the Company with the ability to offer comprehensive testing services to its customer base in the Asia-Pacific region as well as increasing its exposure to other markets.

In December 2009, Genetic Technologies negotiated an exclusive option to investigate the purchase of various assets from Perlegen Sciences, Inc. of Mountain View, California which included a breast cancer non-familial risk assessment test, BREVAGen™. Those assets were subsequently purchased by the Company in April 2010. Work then began on validating the test in the Company’s Australian laboratory as well as initiating the process for obtaining CLIA certification which would enable the Company to undertake the testing of samples received from the U.S. market. By July 2010, a new U.S. subsidiary named Phenogen Sciences Inc. had been incorporated by the Company in Delaware to market and distribute the BREVAGen™ test across mainland U.S.A.

On September 15, 2014 we announced plans to restructure and realign our group activities, in order to focus our strategy on the U.S. molecular diagnostics market and the commercialisation of our lead breast cancer risk test BREVAGen through our U.S. subsidiary Phenogen Sciences, Inc. In October 2014, we announced the U.S. release of BREVAGen*plus*, an easy-to-use predictive risk test for the millions of women at risk of developing sporadic, or non-hereditary, breast cancer, representing a marked enhancement in accuracy and broader patient applicability, over our first generation BREVAGen product. We also made a pivotal change of sales and marketing emphasis toward large comprehensive breast treatment and imaging centres, which are more complex entities with a longer sales cycle, but higher potential.

As part of this realignment, on November 19, 2014 we completed the sale of our Heritage Australian genetics business to Specialist Diagnostic Services Ltd. As part of the Company’s strategy to focus on the expansion of its cancer diagnostic franchise, we continue to evaluate opportunities to sell, out-license or co-develop other assets and technologies in which we have an interest, including our legacy non-coding assertion and licensing program.

BREVAGen*plus* is a *State-of-the-Art* Breast Cancer Risk Assessment Test designed to enable a more personalized breast cancer risk assessment in a greater number of women

The identification, in 2007, of a number of single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs), each with an associated small relative risk of breast cancer, led to the development of the first commercially available genetic risk test for sporadic breast cancer, BREVAGen™. The Company launched the product, in the U.S. in June 2011. In October 2014, Genetic Technologies released its next generation breast cancer risk assessment test, BREVAGen*plus*. This new version of the test incorporates a 10-fold expanded panel of genetic markers (SNPs), known to be associated with the development of sporadic breast cancer, providing an increase in predictive power relative to its first-generation predecessor test. In addition, the new test is clinically validated in a broader population of women including, African American and Hispanic women. This increases the applicable market beyond the Caucasian only indication of the first generation test, and simplifies the marketing process in medical clinics and breast health centres in the U.S.

[Table of Contents](#)

The expanded panel of SNPs incorporated into BREVAGen^{plus} were identified from multiple large-scale genome-wide association studies and subsequently tested in case-control studies utilising specific Caucasian, African American and Hispanic patient samples.

BREVAGen^{plus} is a first-in-class, clinically validated, predictive risk test for sporadic breast cancer which examines a woman's clinical risk factors, combined with seventy seven scientifically validated genetic biomarkers (SNPs), to allow for more personalised breast cancer risk assessment and risk management.

Physicians worldwide look largely to family history of breast cancer as an indication of risk in patients for developing this disease. However, 85% of women who develop breast cancer have little or no family history of developing the disease and BREVAGen^{plus} is designed to help elucidate risk in this group of women.

Targeted towards women over the age of 35 who have little or no family history of breast cancer but harbor one or more known clinical risk factors such as early menstruation, late childbirth, late menopause, a history of atypical or benign breast biopsies, BREVAGen^{plus} provides a more accurate tool for assessing a woman's personal risk of developing breast cancer.

In addition, women designated as having 'dense breasts' upon mammographic evaluation are recognized as being at elevated risk of developing breast cancer, which makes these patients potential candidates for the BREVAGen^{plus} test. Several U.S. States have enacted legislation, which mandates that breast density be documented on mammogram reports, and encourages physicians to discuss risk profiles and risk reduction strategies with these patients. Recent scientific evidence indicates that BREVAGen^{plus} may help to properly identify the high risk women in this category. It is expected that more U.S. jurisdictions will adopt similar legislation in the coming years, increasing awareness of the correlation between dense breast and breast cancer risk amongst healthcare providers, patients and health insurance payers.

In April 2011, the Company announced that it had gained certification of its Australian laboratory under the U.S. Clinical Laboratories Improvements Amendments, as regulated by the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid in Baltimore, Maryland. This certification, which enables the Company to accept and test samples from U.S. residents, was the culmination of preparations required for the U.S. launch of the Company's BREVAGenTM test which occurred in June 2011. Phenogen Sciences has since established an office in Charlotte, North Carolina.

In August 2012, the Company announced that it had received European CE Mark approval for BREVAGenTM, which will allow BREVAGenTM to be sold in the EU and other countries that recognize the CE Mark.

During the first half of the 2013 financial year, the Company announced that it had received licensure to sell BREVAGenTM into the states of California, Maryland, Pennsylvania, Rhode Island and Florida, bringing the total number of U.S. states in which the BREVAGenTM test can be sold to 49 of the 50 U.S. states. In July 2013, the Company was inspected by a representative of the New York State Department of Health, Clinical Laboratory Evaluation Program ("CLEP"). The Company's laboratory received an inspection result with no deficiencies reported and, on August 30, 2013, the Company announced that it had received its Clinical Laboratory Permit (CLEP) from the New York State Department of Health. This permit, which allows the Company to offer the BREVAGenTM test to residents of New York State, completed the final out-of-state licensure allowing the Company to provide testing services to all 50 U.S. states.

From its headquarters in Melbourne, Victoria, the Company's laboratory holds a number of accreditations including:

- The Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments (CLIA) license required for all laboratories offering testing the U.S.;
- The Clinical Laboratory Evaluation Program (CLEP) license, an additional certification required to offer tests in New York State;
- A Medical Device Establishment License (MDEL) required for Canada;
- The BREVAGen^{plus}® test is CE marked for sale in Europe;

Physicians who order clinical tests for their patients represent the primary sources of our testing volume. Fees invoiced to patients and third parties are based on our fee schedule, which may be subject to limitations imposed by third-party payers. The clinical laboratory industry is highly regulated and subject to significant and changing Federal and state laws and regulations. These laws and regulations affect key aspects of our business, including licensure and operations, billing and payment for laboratory services, sales and marketing interactions with ordering physicians, security and confidentiality of health information, and environmental and occupational safety. Oversight by government officials includes regular inspections and audits. We seek to and believe that we do conduct our business in compliance with all applicable laws and regulations.

[Table of Contents](#)

The United States Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments of 1988, or CLIA, extends Federal licensing requirements to all clinical laboratories (regardless of the location, size or type of laboratory), including those operated by physicians in their offices, based on the complexity of the tests they perform. CLIA also establishes a stringent proficiency testing program for laboratories and includes substantial sanctions, such as suspension, revocation or limitation of a laboratory’s CLIA certificate (which is necessary to conduct business), and significant fines and/or criminal penalties.

CLIA, and its implementing regulations, includes quality standards (establishing Federal quality standards for all clinical laboratories); application and user fee requirements; and enforcement procedures. The quality standard regulations establish varying levels of regulatory scrutiny depending upon the complexity of testing performed. The tests on samples provided through our products are processed at our laboratory in Melbourne, Australia. Our laboratory completed its first CLIA inspection under CLIA guidelines and received its certificate of compliance effective November 17, 2011. A re-certification from CMS i.e. paper survey, was performed in November 2013 and another on-site re-certification followed up in February 2016. A . A paper survey was conducted in November 2017 and the company’s next scheduled re-certification survey is due in November 2019. Furthermore, our laboratory completed its first CLEP inspection under the NYS DOH CLEP guidelines and received its certificate of compliance effective August 30, 2013. Since the initial survey, the laboratory has been successful in submitting documents via the NYS eCLEP Health Commerce System for each subsequent year to date. Although no firm date has been provided, the laboratory is expecting an on-site visit in the near future.

We believe the Company is in compliance with all applicable federal and state laboratory requirements. Under CLIA, the company remains subject to state and local laboratory regulations. CLIA provides that a state may adopt laboratory regulations that are more stringent than those under federal law, and some states require additional personnel qualifications, quality control, record maintenance and other requirements.

The CLIA regulations apply to laboratory developed test (LDT) medical device. The FDA defines a LDT as an in vitro diagnostic test that is manufactured by and used within a single laboratory (i.e. a laboratory with a single CLIA certificate). As with other in vitro diagnostic tests, LDTs are considered “devices,” as defined by the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act (FD&CA), and are therefore subject to regulatory oversight by FDA. When a laboratory develops a test system such as an LDT in-house without receiving FDA clearance or approval, the CLIA prohibits the release of any test results prior to the laboratory establishing certain performance characteristics relating to analytical validity for the use of that test system in the laboratory’s own environment, see 42 CFR 493.1253(b)(2) (establishment of performance specifications). This analytical validation is limited, however, to the specific conditions, staff, equipment and patient population of the particular laboratory, so the findings of these laboratory-specific analytical validation are limited in how they can be commercialized outside of the laboratory that did the analysis. Furthermore, the laboratory’s analytical validation of LDTs is reviewed during its routine CLIA biennial survey — after the laboratory has already started testing.

BREVAGen and BREVAGen^{plus} are laboratory developed tests, or LDTs. The federal Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, has regulatory responsibility over, among other areas, instruments, test kits, reagents and other medical devices used by clinical laboratories to perform diagnostic testing. CLIA-certified laboratories, such as ours, frequently develop internal testing procedures to provide diagnostic results to customers. These tests are referred to as laboratory developed tests, or LDTs. LDT’s are subject to CMS oversight through its enforcement of CLIA. The FDA has also claimed regulatory authority over all LDTs, but indicates that it has exercised enforcement discretion with regard to most LDTs offered by high complexity CLIA-certified laboratories, and has not subjected these tests to the panoply of FDA rules and regulations governing medical devices. However, the FDA has stated that it has been considering changes in the way it believes that laboratories ought to be allowed to offer these LDTs, and during 2010 publicly announced that it would be exercising regulatory authority over LDTs, using a risk-based approach that will direct more resources to tests with the highest risk of injury. In September 2014, the FDA announced its framework and timetable for implementing this guidance. In 2017, FDA announced its position that FDA and CMS should share oversight of LDTs and also reiterated that already marketed LDTs would be grandfathered. In its prospective approach, FDA proposed a four year phase in period for pre-market review of LDTs and this approach can affect new or modified current products.

Test samples received since launch

Since launching its BREVAGen test in the U.S. market in July 2011, followed by the U.S. release of, in October 2014, the number of test samples received up to balance date June 30, 2018, was 11,042 tests.

During the financial year ended June 30, 2012, the Company generated the first sales of its BREVAGenTM test. Whilst not material to the overall result, in accordance with revenue recognition principles, due to the relatively limited numbers of tests sold in that first year of launch, the income generated from these sales was recorded on a cash basis Effective January 1, 2013, significant changes in the US reimbursement system have impacted (positively) on the amounts the Company has since received for the BREVAGen tests it performs. As of June 2014, the Company had enough historical data to use to enable it to determine a reliable estimate of the

[Table of Contents](#)

amount of revenue expected to be received. Accordingly the Group up to June 30, 2017 recognized the revenue on the BREVAGen test on an accruals basis. With the transition to a patient self-pay program from April 1, 2017, revenues are recognized on an individual billed basis from July 1, 2017.

In an ongoing effort to establish the most optimal methodology to effectively market the product and improve overall market adoption, during September 2017, the Company transitioned the BREVAGen^{plus} commercial program from a direct salesforce in the U.S. to an ecommerce based solution that will allow the consumer to initiate the testing via a consumer initiated testing (CIT) platform via the Company's U.S. subsidiary, Phenogen Sciences Inc. website. This transition is ongoing as the Company seeks to effectively address all of the regulatory requirements of a CIT solution.

Further expansion of the Company's credentialing program

Credentialing with Preferred Provider Organization ("PPOs") Networks allows for expedited claim adjudication as "in-network". A PPO is a managed care organization of medical doctors, hospitals and other health care providers which has covenanted with insurers or third-party administrators to provide health care, at reduced rates, to the clients of the respective insurer or administrator. Credentialing is a process whereby provider organizations such as physicians, care facilities and ancillary providers (including testing service providers such as Phenogen Sciences) contract directly with the PPO. Contracts with PPOs are fundamental to having claims for the BREVAGenTM test adjudicated as "in-network".

Credentialing contracts have been executed between the Company and InterWest Health, FedMed Inc., MultiPlan Network, Three Rivers Provider Network, Prime Health Services, National Preferred Provider Network / PlanCare America / Ohio Preferred Provider Network LLC (NPPN / OPPN), Galaxy Health Network and Fortified Provider Network.

Historically, the positive impact of this activity was reflected in the fact that the average reimbursement received in respect of claims that were adjudicated as "in-network" was significantly higher than the amounts received in respect of claims that were adjudicated as "out-of-network", with the time taken to collect the funds also being materially shorter.

Ongoing challenges experienced with the traditional reimbursement system resulted in the Company transitioning to a patient self-pay program on April 1, 2017 (see "Reimbursement" below). This change currently eliminates the need for credentialing and the role of the PPO's for new test samples received subsequent to this date.

Reimbursement

Up until the end of the 2012 calendar year, insurance claims for BREVAGen were submitted using the so-called "code stack" of CPT methodology codes. Reimbursement under this regime was positive, with a low percentage of denials and appeals. However, effective January 1, 2013, the AMA removed the code stack claim process, requiring tests without a specific CPT code to be claimed via an "Unlisted or Miscellaneous Code".

As a result of the above changes the Company up to April 1, 2017 used a miscellaneous code when submitting claims for reimbursement from insurers. As part of this transition, the list price for the BREVAGen test was increased to enable the Company to receive payment for aspects of the test that were not previously available under the code stack. Importantly, notwithstanding this, the Company did not seek to increase the maximum out-of-pocket amount that a given patient is required to pay for a BREVAGen^{plus} test under its "Patient Protection Program."

These ongoing reimbursement challenges through the use of a miscellaneous CPT code, as well as overall pressure on the U.S. health care market to lower cost and maximize efficiency were major factors in the Company's decision to transition from a traditional reimbursement system through insurance providers to a direct patient self-pay program from April 1, 2017. Converting to a direct pay relationship with patients is aimed at providing economic and process certainty to the transaction for the healthcare provider and the patient. The change is expected to eliminate ongoing reimbursement issues being experienced, such as low levels of reimbursement, prolonged payment time, patient confusion around eligibility and financial responsibility and poor coverage

Clinical utility studies and peer-review publications to drive reimbursement outcome

With effect from April 1, 2017, the Company transitioned from a traditional reimbursement system through insurance providers, to a direct patient self-pay program. This shift has implications for the series of clinical utility studies, the first two of three which had commenced in the fourth quarter of 2016, that were designed as a means to achieve reimbursement coverage through the private insurers. With the change in the pricing model, that requirement has become redundant.

[Table of Contents](#)

We recognize, however that scientific papers are an essential marketing tool and that scientific and clinical data are key drivers in to help strengthen our commercial position. We intend to explore opportunities to engage in further research collaborations to support clinical utility.

Physicians and the major breast health centers seek multiple points of confirmation that the medical device works as intended and leads to a meaningful improvement in women’s health. Therefore, the more papers that are published on BREVAGen^{plus}, profiling its performance characteristics including clinical validity and utility, the more likely physicians will be to use the test

The Company had previously conducted multiple scientific studies to develop and validate the first generation BREVAGen test as well as created two health economic models to demonstrate potential cost savings and health benefits associated with the BREVAGen test. Importantly, due to the nature of the technology and the specific improvements incorporated in BREVAGen^{plus}, the research undertaken and published based on the original version of the test remains applicable to the new and improved BREVAGen^{plus} test.

Following is a list of peer-reviewed publications on the BREVAGen test, to date:

- 1) **“Cost-effectiveness of a Genetic Test for Breast Cancer Risk”**. *Cancer Prevention Research*. 2013 Dec; 6(12):1328-36.
- 2) **“Economic Evaluation of Using a Genetic Test to Direct Breast Cancer Chemoprevention in White Women with a Previous Breast Biopsy”**. *Applied Health Economics and Health Policy*. 2014 Apr; 12(2):203-17.
- 3) **“Using SNP genotypes to improve the discrimination of a simple breast cancer risk prediction model”**. *Breast Cancer Res Treat*. 2013 Jun; 139(3):887-96.
- 4) **“Assessment of clinical validity of a breast cancer risk model combining genetic and clinical information”**. *J Natl Cancer Inst*. 2010 Nov 3; 102(21):1618-27.
- 5) **“SNP’s and Breast cancer risk prediction for African-American and Hispanic women.”** *Breast Cancer Research & Treatment*. 2015 Dec; 4(3): 583-89.
- 6) **“Breast cancer risk prediction based on clinical models and 77 independent risk-associated SNPs in women aged under 50 years: Australian Breast Cancer Family Registry”** *Cancer, Epidemiology, Biomarkers and Prevention*. 2016 Feb; 25(2): 359-65.
- 7) **“Prediction of breast cancer risk based on profiling with common genetic variants”**. *J Natl Cancer Inst*. 2015; 107 (5):doi:10.1093/jnci/djv036. doi: 10.1093/jnci/djv036.

And supporting presentations:

- 1) Jacoby E, DiCicco, Allman R. (2013). Impact of genomics on the assessment and management of breast cancer risk in a women’s healthcare clinic. Proceedings of the National Consortium of Breast Centers March 2013.
- 2) Fohlse HJ, Dinh TA, Allman R. (2013). Genetic testing for breast cancer risk estimation — A cost-effectiveness analysis. Presented at The California Pacific Medical Centre Breast Cancer Risk Assessment Workshop June 2013.
- 3) Fohlse HJ, Dinh TA, Allman R. (2013). Genetic testing for breast cancer risk estimation — A cost-effectiveness analysis. Presented at the San Antonio Breast Cancer Symposium December 2013.
- 4) Allman R, Dite GS, Hopper JL. (2015). Should women with a projected 5-year risk of developing breast cancer of 1.4% or higher be offered pharmacologic risk reduction? World Congress on Controversies in Breast Cancer: 22-24 October 2015.
- 5) Dite GS, Allman R, Hopper JL (2014). Value of adding Single-Nucleotide Polymorphism panel markers to phenotypic algorithms of Breast Cancer risk. Presented at the San Antonio Breast Cancer Symposium December 2014.

Although there is strong scientific data behind BREVAGen^{plus}, there is always a need for further clinical data to show clinical efficacy and utility of the product. As such, in June 2017, we have engaged in a research collaboration with The Ohio State University which is conducting a clinical trial surrounding the efficacy of polygenic risk in patient management of at-risk women. Our medical affairs team continues to engage with other influential medical centers across the U.S. in order to facilitate further research collaborations that will continue to support the utility of polygenic risk in clinical practice.

Research & Development Projects

During the year ended June 30, 2018, Genetic Technologies supported the following research programs, details of which have been provided below;

[Table of Contents](#)

- BREVAGen*plus*
- Colorectal Cancer Risk Assessment Test
- Research collaboration with The Ohio State University
- Expanded range of other cancer and disease target predictive risk assessment tests

In previous years, other projects, which have since been terminated or otherwise commercialized, have also been supported by the Company. The Company is constantly seeking new opportunities. Historically some projects have arisen from new inventions made by the Company while some have been made by others who have approached the Company seeking collaboration and support for their activities.

By its very nature, research is unpredictable and involves a considerable element of risk. Such risks may relate to scientific concepts, the implementation of the science, the protection of any inventions made and the success or otherwise in persuading others to respect the intellectual property acquired or created by the Company. Specifically, patents filed may not issue or may later be challenged by others. Even if patents issue, the methods described may, with time, be superseded by alternative methods which may prove to be commercially more attractive. Even if patents issue and the methods developed are successfully reduced to practice and can be shown to be commercially relevant, there is still no assurance that other parties will respect the patents or will take licenses to use the intellectual property. In such circumstances, it is possible that legal action will be necessary to enforce the Company’s rights. Such action, in turn, raises a new series of risks including potentially significant legal costs and uncertain outcomes.

To the extent that delays are encountered in concluding the research projects, additional costs may be incurred. Further, the projected revenues from the projects may also be deferred, potentially impacting on the Company’s liquidity. In such cases, the Company may seek to partner with outside parties, who will contribute to the costs of research in return for an interest in the project, or the Company may seek to raise additional working capital from the Market. In a worst case scenario, the projects may well be closed down with no valuable intellectual property having been created for the Company.

BREVAGen*plus*® Project

In June 2011, the Company launched the first iteration of the breast cancer risk assessment test; BREVAGen™. In October 2014, Genetic Technologies released its next-generation breast cancer risk assessment test, BREVAGen*plus*. This new version of the test incorporates a 10-fold expanded panel of genetic markers (SNPs), known to be associated with the development of sporadic breast cancer, providing an increase in predictive power relative to its first-generation predecessor test. In addition, the new test has been studied in a broader population of women including, African American and Hispanic women. This increases the applicable market beyond the Caucasian only application of the first generation test, and simplifies the marketing process in medical clinics and breast health centres in the U.S. The expanded panel of SNPs incorporated into BREVAGen*plus* were identified from multiple large-scale genome-wide association studies and subsequently tested in case-control studies utilising specific Caucasian, African American and Hispanic patient samples.

Further modifications to BREVAGen*plus* were implemented in December 2016. Changes included a simplification of the clinical risk questionnaire, utilized in BREVAGen*plus*, from the seven questions of the Gail Model to just two questions: “Age” and “Any First Degree Relatives.” Additionally, test results are now reported as a 5-year Absolute Risk of Developing Breast Cancer. This approach is modelled on that of Mavaddat et al (2015) 107(5): djv036 and provides multiple product benefits. It simplifies the data-input requirement by the physician, aligns the product more firmly with U.S. clinical guidelines, in particular, the United States Preventative Services Task Force (USPSTF) recommendation statement on chemoprevention of breast cancer, and automatically strengthens the validation data by tying the test to a multinational study of approximately 80,000 women.

Colorectal Cancer (CRC) risk assessment test Project

On November 29, 2016, Genetic Technologies announced the signing of an exclusive worldwide license agreement with The University of Melbourne for the development and commercialization of a novel colorectal cancer (CRC) risk assessment test.

The core technology behind this test was developed by a research team at the University’s Centre for Epidemiology and Biostatistics, with results from preliminary modelling studies first published online in Future Oncology on February 1, 2016, in a Paper entitled “Quantifying the utility of single nucleotide polymorphisms to guide colorectal cancer screening,” 2016 Feb: 12(4), 503-13. This simulated case-control study of 1 million patients indicated that a panel of 45 known susceptibility SNPs can stratify the population into clinically useful CRC risk categories. In practice, the technology could be used to identify people at high risk for CRC who should be subjected to intensive screening, ultimately reducing the risk of occurrence and death from the disease. Those identified as low risk of CRC can be spared expensive and invasive screening, thereby preventing adverse events and unjustified expenses.

[Table of Contents](#)

A scientific validation study supporting this work has been completed, and a report of the research program progress has been delivered to the Company. Whilst the terms of the Agreement are confidential, these events represent an important first milestone in the development of a new test as the Company seeks to diversify its product pipeline and become a key player in the SNP-based cancer risk assessment landscape.

The fundamental technology is similar to the BREVAGen*plus* test and is expected to fit synergistically into the Company’s existing infrastructure and processes.

The Company is on track to begin the commercialisation process for the new colon cancer screening test in October 2018. A scientific validation study was completed during the current year, the results of which confirm previously evaluated modelling data. Test design and identification of relevant reporting requirements are in progress.

Research Collaboration with The Ohio State University

On June 15, 2017 the Company executed a Clinical Study Agreement with The Ohio State University, Technology Commercialization Office and Division of Human Genetics. This is an “investigator-initiated” study in which Genetic Technologies was approached to be the collaborating partner, reflecting the growing awareness of the Company’s expertise in SNP-based risk assessment.

The terms and conditions of the Agreement are confidential; however Genetic Technologies will supply novel SNP-based genotyping for a clinical research study, through its CLIA laboratory facility, on a fee for service basis. The Company will be responsible for the development and validation of the new assay, although the fundamental technology is similar to the BREVAGen*plus* test and will fit synergistically into the Company’s existing laboratory infrastructure and processes. Importantly, if the first phase of the study is successful, several other major genetics centers in the U.S. have expressed an interest in joining the study.

This collaborative study provides two tangible benefits for the Company:

- (i) engagement and collaboration with high profile cancer genetics researchers in the U.S. who are at the forefront of risk assessment research; and
- (ii) the resulting data can be used to inform the design of future pipeline products

Whilst sample collection by the University has been slower than expected during the current year, the Company remains committed to delivering a high standard of service as envisaged under the terms of the agreement.

New Product Development

Whilst very much at an early stage of activity, during the current year, the Company commenced development of a suite of genetic screening tests targeting both cancer and non-oncological diseases, including:

- Prostate Cancer
- Melanoma
- Type 2 Diabetes
- Cardiovascular Disease

The new risk assessment tests represent a significant market opportunity. To assist with this programme GTG is investigating alternative technology and platforms for performing the Company’s genetic testing.

Blockchain Projects

Through a strategic alliance with Blockchain Global Limited (BCG) and establishment of a new functional team, the Company is actively engaging with stakeholders and pursuing opportunities that potentially allow it to not only build on the genomic assets and expertise that it has developed to date but also take advantage of the new and developing opportunities that blockchain digital platforms may create in the medical and biotech industries. Blockchain technology presents a unique opportunity for the Company to contribute to the advancement of cancer research and to improve the health of individuals around the world. The security and privacy inherent in the blockchain provides a means by which individuals can share their genomic information while retaining control of their personal medical records.

[Table of Contents](#)

Through the wholly owned subsidiary, GeneVentures, the Company is actively seeking to assist with efforts required for the successful introduction of products or services into the biotech market through;

- Expertise in commercialising and operationalising new medical technology
- Knowledge and experience applying blockchain technology to the biotech sector
- Introduction of cutting-edge technology solutions into the US and APAC
- Marketing in support of product launches
- Pathways to development resources for blockchain solutions

As part of our blockchain initiative, to date we have commenced work with several organisations, including Swisstec Helath Analytics Limited to develop a blockchain-enabled platform to address the retail market in Southeast Asia, and Project Shivom (Omix Ventures) whose platform will act as a distribution channel for existing and planned genetic risk screening tests in India.

Historical Research Projects

Following a significant corporate restructure undertaken during the 2015 fiscal year, a strategic decision was made to focus the Company on the US diagnostics market and all historical research projects were ceased.

Competition

The medical diagnostics and biotechnology industries is subject to intense competition. As more information regarding cancer genomics and personalized medicine becomes available to the public, we anticipate that more products aimed at identifying cancer risk will be developed and that these products may compete with ours. However, the use of Single Nucleotide Polymorphisms (SNPs), for disease risk prediction is still a relatively new field of medicine.

Until recently, there have been no active direct competitors marketing an assay similar to that of BREVAGEN*plus* in the sporadic breast cancer risk assessment space. Effective August 31, 2017, Myriad Genetic Laboratories Inc. announced that it will market a new breast cancer risk-prediction tool, which according to our early understanding is a direct competitor for BREVAGEN*plus*. Similarly, effective March 14, 2018, Ambry Genetics Corporation launched a precision risk tool that provides lifetime breast cancer risk information and from information we have available is s direct competitor to BREVAGEN*plus*. Other organizations such as 23andMe and Color Genomics in the U.S. have also over the past few years developed SNP based risk tests that whilst not currently direct competitors to BREVAGEN*plus*, are attracting significant consumer interest.

In recent years, a number of other organizations, including deCODE (Iceland), 23andMe, Intergenetics, and Navigenics (subsequently acquired by Life Technologies — now ThermoFisher) have attempted to commercialize SNP-based genetic tests, to both physicians and consumers, to assess sporadic breast cancer risk in relevant patient populations. But either due to a lack of adequate and compelling scientific validation, and/or sufficient commercial impetus and capability, these efforts have led to lackluster market adoption, resulting in either the dissolution of these businesses or a marked change in their strategy and ultimate competitive posture to genuinely challenge the efforts of the Company to commercialize and grow its BREVAGEN*plus* franchise. New entrants that we are aware of that are in early stages of product development include Counsyl Inc. and Invitae Corporation in the U.S.

Nonetheless, there are a number of academic centers and affiliated research and development bodies, in the U.S and in Europe, that are reportedly exploring the validity and clinical viability of SNP-based commercial tests in the clinical setting, but it is unclear to what extent these entities currently represent a direct or indirect potential competitive liability to the Company. A number of established, mature laboratory services companies, such as Ambry Genetics, and Laboratory Corporation of America, among others, have the demonstrable product development, marketing skill and resources to enter into this market for sporadic breast cancer risk assessment. Many of these larger potential competitors have already established name and brand recognition and more extensive collaborative relationships, but again, it is unclear to what extent these potential competitive threats could manifest in the near-to-long term.

The Company continues to invest in proprietary, differentiating features of its BREVAGEN*plus* test offering to diminish any prospective efforts of a potential competitor, be they an established commercial laboratory provider, a research/academic test development or laboratory services entity. Therefore, any imminent bona fide risk that any one of these entities represents to the continued success and growth of the Company’s BREVAGEN*plus* commercialization efforts and market-leading position in this area is not clear.

[Table of Contents](#)

The Company’s competitive position in the genetic testing area is based upon, amongst other things, our ability to:

- maintain first to market advantage;
- continue to strengthen and maintain scientific credibility through the process of obtaining scientific validation and undertaken further clinical trials supported by Peer-reviewed publication in medical journals;
- create and maintain scientifically-advanced technology and offer proprietary products and services
- continue to strengthen and improve the messaging and the importance and value of the breast cancer information that BREVAGen^{plus} provides to Physicians
- attract and retain qualified personnel;
- obtain patent or other protection for our products and services;
- obtain required government approvals and other accreditations on a timely basis; and
- successfully market our products and services.

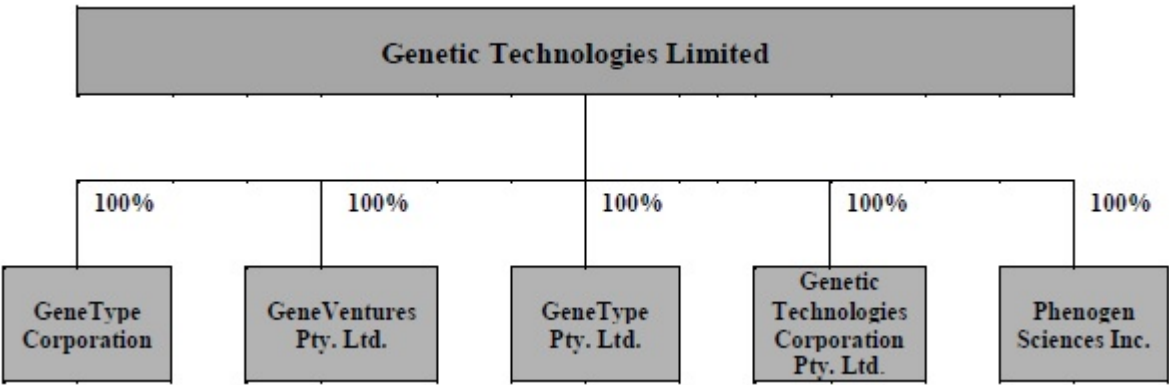
If we are not successful in meeting these goals, our business could be adversely affected. Similarly, our competitors may succeed in developing technologies, products or services that are more effective than any that we are developing or that would render our technology and services obsolete, noncompetitive or uneconomical.

Environmental Regulations

The Company’s operations are subject to environmental regulations under Australian State legislation. In particular, the Company is subject to the requirements of the *Environment Protection Act 1993*. A license has been obtained under this Act to produce listed waste.

Item 4.C Corporate Structure

The diagram below shows the corporate structure of the Genetic Technologies group as of the date of this Annual Report:



Genetic Technologies is the holding company of the Group and is listed on the Australian Securities Exchange, under the code GTG and, via its ADRs, on the NASDAQ Capital Market, under the ticker symbol GENE.

At December 13, 2017, liquidation of the dormant subsidiary GeneTypeAG was completed.

Item 4.D Property, Plant and Equipment

As at date of this Report, the Company has executed two leases in respect of premises occupied by the Group.

[Table of Contents](#)

Fitzroy, Victoria

Genetic Technologies Limited rents the offices and laboratory premises which are located at 60-66 Hanover Street, Fitzroy, Victoria, Australia (an inner suburb of Melbourne) from Crude Pty. Ltd. The three year lease is due to expire on August 31, 2018. The anticipated total rental charge in respect of the year ending June 30, 2018 is approximately \$35,676. On July 3, 2018 the lease agreement for the Fitzroy premises in Melbourne was extended for 3 years from September 1, 2018 to August 31, 2021.

Charlotte, North Carolina

Phenogen Sciences Inc., a wholly-owned subsidiary of Genetic Technologies Limited, rents office premises which are located at 9115 Harris Corners Parkway, Suite 320, Charlotte, North Carolina, USA from New Boston Harris Corners LLC. This lease expired on October 31, 2017. It was then followed by a month to month lease. The anticipated total rental charge in respect of the year ending June 30, 2018, based on the month to month lease, is approximately USD 4,404. Phenogen Sciences Inc. entered into a 2 year lease agreement effective July 23, 2018 for premises situated at Suite 157, 1300 Baxter Street, Charlotte, North Carolina.

Item 5. Operating and Financial Review and Prospects

You should read the following discussion and analysis in conjunction with Item 3.A “Selected Financial Data” and our financial statements, the notes to the financial statements and other financial information appearing elsewhere in this Annual Report. In addition to historical information, the following discussion and other parts of this Annual Report contain forward-looking statements that reflect our plans, estimates, intentions, expectations and beliefs. Our actual results could differ materially from those discussed in the forward-looking statements. See the “Risk Factors” section of Item 3 and other forward-looking statements in this Annual Report for a discussion of some, but not all, factors that could cause or contribute to such differences.

Item 5.A Operating Results

Overview

Founded in 1989, Genetic Technologies is an established Australian-based molecular diagnostics company that offers predictive genetic testing and risk assessment tools, with a current focus on women’s health. During the year ended June 30, 2015 the Company divested its interest in other genetic testing services, which up until then together with licensing of non-coding technology had provided the main source of income to fund operations, to concentrate on the principal activity of the provision of molecular risk assessment for cancer.

In August 2017 the Company initiated a comprehensive strategic review, whereby it appointed Roth Capital Partners LLC, a U.S. based investment firm, to explore a wide range of strategic alternatives including a business combination or strategic merger, reverse merger, sale of the Company or its assets, in-licensing assets, an acquisition, or other transaction designed to maximize near and long term value for the Company’s shareholders. Following a significant change to the composition of the Board of Directors on January 31, 2018, which saw three new Directors elected, the Company elected not to pursue any of the potential strategic opportunities that were identified during the comprehensive review undertaken by Roth Capital Partners during the latter half of 2017, instead electing to focus on commercialising existing R&D capabilities, IP and BREVAGen^{plus} to achieve better patient outcomes and exploring blockchain opportunities.

The operating result for the year ended June 30, 2018 is directly reflective of these activities.

Since inception up to June 30, 2018, we have incurred \$123,311,946 in accumulated losses. Our losses have resulted principally from costs incurred in research and development, general and administrative and sales and marketing costs associated with our operations. Refer to the Consolidated Statements of Operations in Item 18.

During the 2018 financial year, Genetic Technologies Limited and its subsidiaries generated consolidated gross revenues from continuing operations, excluding other income, of approximately \$0.2 million, a decrease from \$0.5 million in 2017 and \$ 0.8 million in 2016. As the Company continues to explore the optimal methodology to effectively market its product offering , the comparisons reflect;

- a. the impact of the substantial restructuring changes that took place during 2015,
- b. the slow growth rates being experienced in the market adoption of the BREVAGen^{plus} breast cancer risk assessment test in the U.S.,
- c. the impact of the change to a patient self-pay billing model in 2017, and
- d. whilst undertaking a comprehensive review of strategic alternatives for the Company, the transition from a direct salesforce in the U.S. to an ecommerce CIT platform in September 2017

Fiscal year

As an Australian company, our fiscal, or financial, year ends on June 30 each year. We produce audited consolidated accounts at the end of June each year and provide reviewed half-yearly accounts for the periods ending on December 31 each year, both of which are prepared in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (“IFRS”) as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board.

Recent Accounting Pronouncements

In respect of the year ended June 30, 2018, the Group has assessed all new accounting standards mandatory for adoption during the current year, noting no new standards which would have a material effect on the disclosure in these financial statements. There has been no effect on the profit and loss or the financial position of the Group. Certain new accounting standards and interpretations have been published that are not mandatory for June 30, 2018 reporting periods. The Group’s and the parent entity’s assessment of the impact of these new standards and interpretations is set out in Note 2(b) of the attached financial statements.

Critical Accounting Policies

The accounting policies which are applicable to the Group and the parent entity are set out in Notes 2(c) to 2(u) of the attached financial statements.

Comparison of the year ended June 30, 2018 to the year ended June 30, 2017

Revenues from operations

During 2018, the Group continued to focus on achieving market acceptance and physician adoption of the BREVAGen^{plus}® breast cancer risk assessment test in the U.S. through its wholly owned U.S. subsidiary, Phenogen Sciences Inc.

During the 2018 financial year, Genetic Technologies Limited and its subsidiaries generated consolidated gross revenues from continuing operations, excluding other revenue, of \$189,254 compared to \$518,506 in the preceding year. The overall decline of \$329,252 is as a result of a \$197,734 reduction in previously accrued BREVAGenTM and BREVAGen^{plus} revenues, driven by ongoing reduced test samples and collection rates, with the balance of \$131,518 of the differential directly attributable to a decrease in the overall combined sales of the BREVAGenTM and BREVAGen^{plus}® tests. Samples received for BREVAGenTM and BREVAGen^{plus}® tests during 2018 were 405 compared to 895 in the previous financial year.

Overheads decreased by \$1,603,539 compared with 2017. The combined areas of selling/ marketing, administration, licensing and operations (excluding net foreign currency losses) totaled \$6,449,923 for the year compared with \$8,053,462 for 2017. The overall decrease is reflective of the ongoing commitment to effectively manage overhead spending, and a transition from a direct salesforce to an ecommerce based solution in the U.S.

The loss for the 2017 year of \$8,403,826 (2018: \$5,463,872) includes a \$544,694 (2018: Nil) expense for the impairment of intangible assets.

Cost of sales

Our cost of sales from continuing operations decreased by 39% from \$492,417 to \$300,088. BREVAGen^{plus}® direct materials utilized decreased by 45% from \$172,070 to \$ 93,869 as a result of the reduced number of samples received. Depreciation expense attributable to the laboratory testing equipment increased by \$ 5,286 whilst direct labour costs decreased by \$64,077 as a result of a continued streamlining of the laboratory team to match the reduced samples received. There was a decrease in inventories written off of \$44,765 in 2018, which included BREVAGen^{plus}® materials that had expired during the year of \$ 24,506.

Selling and marketing expenses

Selling and marketing expenses decreased by \$1,655,070 (61%) to \$1,066,404 during the 2018 financial year. Personnel related costs decreased by \$822,151 (54%) as a direct result of the transition from a direct sales force in the U.S. to an ecommerce web enabled sales platform to sell BREVAGen^{plus}. Fees paid billing and collection services decreased by \$208,974 to \$49,086 as the Company terminated its agreement with a service provider in 2017 and introduced a patient self-pay pricing model for its tests. Marketing and promotion costs decreased by \$242,058 (93%) as certain sponsorship agreements and other marketing activities were not pursued in light of the strategic review initiated by the Company in August 2017.

General and administrative expenses

General and administrative expenses (excluding net foreign currency losses) increased by \$210,519 (7%) to \$3,144,178 during the financial year.

Personnel related costs increased by \$270,993 (18%) as a result of the payout to the previous CEO on his departure in February 2018, as well as 3 additional headcount engaged in February 2018 to oversee the blockchain opportunities being pursued by the Company. This was offset by a decrease in audit, accounting and tax fees of \$129,736 in line with streamlined commercial operations.

Laboratory, research and development costs

Laboratory, research and development costs decreased by \$155,836 (7%) to \$2,210,498 during the 2018 financial year. As a result of lower test samples received, there was a reduction in 1 part time position, and 1 full time positions resigned during the year, which when combined with reductions in headcount in the previous year, resulted in a decrease in employee related costs of \$216,041 (26%) to \$611,888. Patent & legal costs increased by \$95,320 (22%) to \$534,235 as the Company continued to strengthen its patent portfolio around the BREVAGenplus technology and Colorectal Cancer research project. Laboratory materials related to in-house research and development work performed on the BREVAGenplus, CRC & OSU projects increased by \$182,767 to \$220,809. This was offset by a decrease of \$100,000 (100%) in fees payable to the University Of Melbourne as part of the Colorectal Cancer research project.

Finance costs

Finance costs decreased by \$3,152 (10%) to \$ 28,843 during the 2018 year. Finance costs incurred in 2018 and 2017 were primarily bank charges.

Non-Operating income and expenses

Other income and expenses included the following movements:

- Research and development tax credit of \$299,351 in the current financial year increased by \$46,192. The research tax credit is recognized on an accrual basis when realizable. There was an increase in laboratory supplies used in research activates of \$ 182,767 as the Company refocused on the BREVAGenplus and CRC projects in the second half opf the year, whilst license fees payable to the University of Melbourne for the CRC project decreased by \$100,000.
- Export Marketing And Development Grant of \$126,907 for eligible expenditure related to 2016 & 2017 was received during the year. The grant was not previously recognized by the Company as there was no reasonable assurance of receipt.
- A net foreign currency gain of \$128,360 (2017; loss of \$175,871) was recorded for the year. The profit is primarily driven by the translation of US dollar cash reserves to Australian dollars at June 30, 2018.
- An impairment expense of \$544,694 was recognized in the prior year ending June 30, 2017 (2018: \$ Nil) relating to the BREVAGen intangible assets was recognized. The assets have were impaired in line with IAS 36, Impairment of assets and the Company’s accounting policy, as disclosed in note 2 of the 2018 Annual Report

Comparison of the year ended June 30, 2017 to the year ended June 30, 2016

Revenues from operations

The Group’s primary focus during 2017 was aimed at achieving market acceptance and physician adoption of the BREVAGenplus® breast cancer risk assessment test in the U.S. through its wholly owned U.S. subsidiary, Phenogen Sciences Inc. This strategy resulted in the implementation of several modifications to the BREVAGenplus® test as well as the transition from a traditional reimbursement system through insurance providers to a direct patient self-pay pay program in an effort to simplify the BREVAGenplus® billing and collection policy. An enhanced medical affairs presence together with a refined marketing message, with a focus on health care provider education have been key elements in the drive to achieve this market acceptance and adoption.

During the 2017 financial year, Genetic Technologies Limited and its subsidiaries generated consolidated gross revenues from continuing operations, excluding other revenue, of \$518,506 compared to \$824,586 in the preceding year. The overall decline of \$306,080 is as a result of a \$191,661 reduction in previously accrued BREVAGen™ and BREVAGenplus revenues, driven by ongoing

[Table of Contents](#)

reduced test samples and collection rates, with the balance of \$114,419 of the differential directly attributable to a decrease in the overall combined sales of the BREVAGen™ and BREVAGenplus® tests. Samples received for BREVAGen™ and BREVAGenplus® tests during 2017 were 895 compared to 1,184 in the previous financial year.

Overheads decreased by \$852,040 compared with 2016. The combined areas of selling/ marketing, administration, licensing and operations (excluding net foreign currency losses) totaled \$8,053,462 for the year compared with \$8,905,502 for 2016. The overall decrease is reflective of the ongoing commitment to effectively manage overhead spending.

The loss for the year of \$8,403,826 includes a \$544,694 expense for the impairment of intangible assets. No significant items were reported during the previous financial year.

Cost of sales

Our cost of sales from continuing operations decreased by 34% from \$743,060 to \$492,417. There was a slight increase in BREVAGenplus® direct materials utilized of \$12,814 as a result of the operating inefficiencies of performing testing on a reduced number of samples received. Depreciation expense attributable to the laboratory testing equipment increased by \$ 10,890 whilst direct labor costs decreased by \$46,347 as a result of a streamlined laboratory team. There was a decrease in inventories written off of \$228,000 in 2017, which included BREVAGenplus® materials that had expired during the year of \$ 53,856.

Other revenue

Other revenue which in prior years included total revenues generated from our licensing and royalty and annuity activities decreased by \$300,548 (100%) to \$ Nil. This decrease is attributable to the expiry of a license agreement with Applera Corporation December 2015 as well as being reflective of the Company's restructuring activities initiated in 2015, whereby focus on the previous licensing and assertion program was minimized.

Although there was an overall change in focus during 2015 to grow sales revenues of BREVAGenplus® in the U.S, the Company will continue to use Sheridan Ross to assist with its licensing and intellectual property activities.

Selling and marketing expenses

Selling and marketing expenses decreased by \$465,023 (15%) to \$2,721,474 during the 2017 financial year. Personnel related costs decreased by \$201,799 (12%) as a direct result of ongoing natural attrition within the U.S. sales and marketing team. Fees paid for public relations services decreased by \$207,361 to \$Nil as the Company terminated its agreement with a service provider in 2016.

General and administrative expenses

General and administrative expenses (excluding net foreign currency losses) decreased by \$68,124 (2%) to \$2,933,659 during the financial year.

In line with streamlined commercial operations subsequent to the 2015 restructuring, fees for tax advice and compliance, accounting and other services decreased by \$55,259 (34%) to \$107,997. In the absence of any specific U.S. filing such as an f-3 shelf filing undertaken in the U.S. during 2016, Legal and other U.S. regulatory costs incurred under a streamlined operating structure decreased by 32% (\$58,006) to \$125,992

Licensing, patent and legal costs

No Licensing, patent and legal costs were incurred during 2017. The last of the personnel associated with the Licensing assertion program left the Company in July 2015 and consulting fees paid in relation to the program ceased in November 2014. Prior year costs have been combined with Laboratory, research and development costs for disclosure purposes in the Statement of Comprehensive Income/ (loss) for 2017.

Laboratory, research and development costs

Laboratory, research and development costs decreased by \$321,999 (12%) to \$2,366,334 during the 2017 financial year. As a result of lower test samples received, there was a reduction in 2 part time and 1 full time positions during the year, which resulted in a decrease in employee related costs of \$72,384 (8%) to \$827,929. Patent & legal costs decreased by \$59,724 (12%) to \$438,915, primarily (\$49,212 or 82% of the decrease) attributable to the restructuring activities of 2015, and the decision to no longer actively pursue the

[Table of Contents](#)

RareCollect research project. Additionally, as a result of the impairment of the intangible assets at December 31, 2016, the amortization expense associated with the intangible assets decreased by \$63,782 (50%) in 2017.

Finance costs

Finance costs increased by \$3,106 (11%) to \$ 31,995 during the 2017 year. Finance costs incurred in 2017 and 2016 were primarily bank charges.

Non-Operating income and expenses

Other income and expenses included the following movements:

- Research and development tax credit of \$253,159 for the year ended June 30, 2017 decreased by \$106,614. The research tax credit is recognized on an accrual basis when realizable. There was a decrease in laboratory supplies used in research activities of \$ 155,240 as most of the work was undertaken at third party collaborator facilities.
- A net foreign currency loss of \$175,871 (2016: \$427,574) was recorded for the year ended June 30, 2017. The loss is primarily driven by the translation of US dollar cash reserves to Australian dollars at June 30, 2017.
- An impairment expense of \$544,694 (2016: \$ Nil) relating to the BREVAGen intangible assets was recognized. The assets were impaired in line with IAS 36, Impairment of assets and the Company's accounting policy, as disclosed in note 2 of the 2017 Annual Report

Item 5.B Liquidity and Capital Resources

Summary

Since inception, our operations have been financed primarily from capital contributions by our stockholders, proceeds from our licensing activities and revenues from operations, grants, and interest earned on the Company's cash and cash equivalents. Currently our overall cash position depends on completion of our research & development activities, overall market acceptance of and revenue generated by our BREVAGenplus® test, blockchain opportunities, grants and interest earned on the Company's cash & cash equivalents. The Company's cash and cash equivalents were \$5,487,035 as of June 30, 2018.

During the year ended June 30, 2018, we incurred comprehensive losses of \$5,986,838. During the year ended June 30, 2017, we incurred comprehensive losses of \$8,534,481. During the year ended June 30, 2016, we incurred comprehensive losses of \$7,151,746.

During the year ended June 30, 2018, the Company's net cash flows used in continuing operations were \$5,621,315. During the year ended June 30, 2017, the Company's net cash flows used in continuing operations were \$6,813,639. During the year ended June 30, 2016, the Company's net cash flows used in continuing operations were \$7,726,838.

The Directors expect increased cash outflows from operations during the 2019 financial year as the Company continues to invest resources in expanding the research & development, particularly the enhancement of the BREVAGenplus test, development of the colorectal cancer risk assessment test and a suite of genetic screening tests targeting both cancer and non-oncological diseases, exploring distribution activities of BREVAGenplus in the U.S. and Asia as well as embracing blockchain opportunities in the medical and biotech space. As a result of these expected cash outflows, the Directors have subsequent to June 30, 2018 executed an equity placement facility with Kentgrove Capital Pty Ltd whereby it has an opportunity to raise equity funding of up to \$20 million in a series of individual placements of up to \$ 1 million over a period of 20 months, expiring April 2020. In addition to this facility, the Directors will also consider other sources of equity funding through traditional offerings in either Australia or the U.S.

Going Concern. The longer-term viability of the Company and its ability to continue as a going concern and meet its debts and commitments as they fall due is dependent on the satisfactory completion of planned equity raisings which are not guaranteed.

Due to the uncertainty surrounding the timing, quantum or the ability to raise additional equity, there is a material uncertainty that may cast significant doubt on the Company's ability to continue as a going concern and therefore, that it may be unable to realize its assets and discharge its liabilities in the normal course of business. However, the Directors believe that the Company will be successful in the above matters and accordingly, have prepared the attached financial report on a going concern basis.

Operating Activities. Our net cash from / (used in) operating activities was \$ (5,621,315), \$(6,813,639) and \$(7,726,838) for the years ended June 30, 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively. Cash from / (used in) operating activities for each period consisted

[Table of Contents](#)

primarily of losses incurred in operations reduced by impairment of intangible assets expenses, depreciation and amortization expenses, share based payments expenses, foreign exchange movements and unrealized profits and losses relating to investments. In approximate order of magnitude, cash outflows typically consist of staff-related costs, marketing expenses, service testing expenses, general and administrative expenses, legal/patent fees and research and development costs.

Investing Activities. Our net cash (used in) investing activities was \$(2,385), \$(182,149) and \$(296,331) for the years ended June 30, 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively. During the year ended June 30, 2017, \$52,650 was received from the sale of unutilized laboratory equipment that was superfluous to the requirements of the Company’s current operations following the 2015 divestment of the Heritage business. Apart from the purchase of plant and equipment of \$2,385 in 2018, \$234,799 in 2017 and \$303,462 in 2016, we had no other significant capital expenditures for the years ended June 30, 2018, 2017 and 2016.

Financing Activities. Our net cash from / (used in) financing activities was \$(9,963), \$7,110,049 and \$(1,654) for the years ended June 30, 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively. During the year ended June 30, 2017, the Company generated cash flows of \$8,049,369 from the issue of 720,000,000 ordinary shares and \$295,110 from a facility fee rebate on previously issued shares less costs associated with the transactions of \$(1,234,430). No new financing activities were undertaken for the years ended June 30, 2018 and 2016,

Future cash requirements

The Directors have undertaken an assessment of the Company’s ability to pay its debts as and when they fall due. As part of this assessment, the Directors have had regard to the Company’s cash flow forecasts for the twelve month period from the date at which the Financial Report was authorized and lodged and the cash balance on hand as of that date. The Directors recognize that there is uncertainty in the consolidated entity’s cash flow forecasts, and that the continuing viability of the Company and its ability to continue as a going concern and meet its debts and commitments as they fall due is dependent on the successful completion of planned equity raisings.

We do not have any lines of credit and nominal credit card facilities with National Australia Bank Limited (“NAB”) and Bank of America, N.A. which, as of June 30, 2018, had total available credit of \$171,739

Operating leases

We are obligated under two operating leases that were in place at June 30, 2018. These leases relate to the premises occupied by the Company in Fitzroy, Victoria, Australia and by its U.S. subsidiary, Phenogen Sciences Inc., in Charlotte, North Carolina, U.S.A.

The future minimum lease payments in respect of the two operating leases that were in place and had remaining non-cancellable lease terms as of June 30, 2018 were \$41,625.

Item 5.C Research and Development, Patents and Licenses, etc.

Our principal business is biotechnology, with a historical emphasis on genomics and genetics, the licensing of our non-coding patents, reduction to practice of our fetal cell patents and expansion of the related service testing business. Research and development expenditure as below is reflective of the changes implemented during 2015 following the sale of the Australian Heritage business in November 2014, and a focus the BREVAGenplus® breast cancer risk test. In November 2016, we commenced work on the colorectal cancer (CRC) risk assessment test project, and in June 2017 we commenced work on the Ohio State University research collaboration.

The following table details historic R&D expenditure by project.

	2018 \$	2017 \$	2016 \$
RareCollect (1)	12,555	10,782	59,453
BREVAGenplus	266,723	216,121	282,460
Colorectal Cancer Risk Assessment Test	114,315	114,651	—
Ohio State University	48,377		

[Table of Contents](#)

Other general R&D	18,544	77,044	53,625
Total R&D expense	460,514	418,598	395,538
Other expenditure	5,634,088	8,847,846	9,680,597
Total expenditure	6,094,602	9,266,444	10,076,136
R&D as a % of total expenditure	8%	5%	4%

(1) The RareCollect project ceased during 2014. The costs incurred since then relate to legal fees associated with the patent portfolio.

Item 5.D Trend Information

The direction of genetic research and breast cancer

During the 1990s, the two major susceptibility genes for breast cancer, *BRCA1* and *BRCA2*, were identified. Mutations in these genes account for approximately 30% of the familial risk for breast cancer. Following these discoveries, a large number of candidate gene studies were conducted over the following decade, aimed at identifying moderate and low-penetrance alleles believed to be responsible for the remaining familial risk.

In 2007, one of the very first large scale genome-wide association studies (GWAS) reported five significant loci associated with breast cancer risk. It was these loci which formed the basis of the Company’s first generation BREVAGen breast cancer risk assessment test. Further GWAS continue to provide additional loci associated with breast cancer risk and these are incorporated into the Company’s second generation BREVAGen*plus* test. The Company continues to monitor developments in the field.

Following the success of the initial GWAS for breast cancer and improvements in the technology required to conduct the studies, many international research groups are now investigating genetic associations with different types of cancer and other “multifactorial” diseases. These studies are likely to lead to new genetic tests for disease susceptibility, both in cancer and other diseases.

Our ability to produce such tests will depend on our ability to secure licensing agreements to the underlying technology or to take part in the basic research studies.

We believe that the demand for genetic risk assessment testing is in its infancy and will continue to grow in the coming years.

Item 5E. Off-balance sheet arrangements

We are not a party to any material off-balance sheet arrangements. In addition, we have no unconsolidated special purpose financing or partnership entities that are likely to create any material contingent obligations.

Item 5F. Information about contractual obligations

The table below shows the contractual obligations and commercial commitments as of June 30, 2018:

	0-1 year	>1-<3 years	>3-<5 years	>5 years
Operating lease commitments	\$ 41,625	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —

The above financial obligations are in respect of leases over office and laboratory premises.

On July 3, 2018 the lease agreement for the Fitzroy premises in Melbourne was extended for 3 years from September 1, 2018 to August 31, 2021. In addition, Phenogen Sciences Inc. has vacated the Harris Corners Parkway office in Charlotte and entered into a 2 year lease agreement effective July 23, 2018 for premises at 1300 Baxter Street, Suite 157, Charlotte, North Carolina.

Item 6. Directors, Senior Management and Employees

Item 6.A Directors and Senior Management

The Directors of the Company as of the date of this Annual Report are:

Dr Paul A. Kasian, PhD, MBA, GAICD (*Chairman & Chief Executive Officer*)

Dr Kasian was appointed to the Board on December 12, 2013 and became Chairman of the Company on January 31, 2018 and interim, part time CEO on February 6, 2018. He brings to the Board a combination of expertise in strategic business leadership and biotech investment giving him a deep understanding on key value drivers for companies in generating shareholder value. He is an experienced

[Table of Contents](#)

executive director with demonstrated domestic and international success in funds management, encompassing senior leadership, investment and risk roles.

Dr Kasian has held senior leadership positions in a number of investment groups, and has significant funds management experience in Australia leading investment in the healthcare and life sciences sector. He holds a PhD in Microbiology and a Master of Business Administration, both from the University of Melbourne, and is a Graduate Member of the Australian Institute of Company Directors. Dr Kasian is also a non-executive director and the Chairman of IODM Limited (ASX: IOD), and former Non-Executive Director of ELK OrthoBiologics and Blockchain Global Limited.

Dr Lindsay Wakefield, MBBS *(Non-Executive)*

Dr Wakefield was appointed to the Board on September 24, 2014. He started Safetech in 1985 and over the next 25 years Safetech became a force in the Australian material handling and lifting equipment market, designing and manufacturing a wide range of industrial products. In 1993, he left Medicine to become the fulltime CEO of the Company. In 2006 Safetech was awarded the Telstra Australian National Business of the Year. In 2013 Safetech merged and ultimately acquired Tieman Materials Handling. Dr. Wakefield continues as the CEO of the Company. It is Australia’s largest manufacturer and supplier of dock equipment, freight hoists and custom lifting solutions. Safetech employs approximately 100 people. Dr. Wakefield has been a Biotech investor for more than 20 years.

Dr Jerzy (George) Muchnicki *(Executive)*

Dr Muchnicki was appointed to the Board on January 31, 2018 and has also been appointed to the role of part time Business Development Director. George graduated from Monash University having held positions in private practice for some 25 years to head of student health at Melbourne University. For the past 14 years he has been mostly involved in commercialisation and funding R&D in the biotechnology sector from gene silencing to regenerative medicine.

Dr Muchnicki brings with him strong commercial and medical skills, including broad interests in software development, blockchain and sustainable building materials. He is a co-founder and Non-Executive Director of Speed Panel Holdings a world leader in fire rated and acoustic wall solutions. He is also the co-founder of Candlebets, a software development company that is creating blockchain enabled platforms for the gaming industry.

Mr Peter Rubinstein *(Non-Executive)*

Mr Peter Rubinstein was appointed to the Board on January 31, 2018. He has over 20 years’ experience in early stage technology commercialisation through to public listings on the ASX. He is a lawyer, having worked at one of the large national firms prior to moving in house at Montech, the commercial arm of Monash University.

Mr Rubinstein has had significant exposure to the creation, launch and management of a diverse range of technology companies including in biotech, digital payments and renewable energy. Peter is also Chairman of DigitalX Limited (DCC) and an advisor to Blockchain Global Limited.

Mr Xue (Sam) Lee *(Non-Executive)*

Mr Sam Lee was appointed to the Board on January 31, 2018. He is the founder and CEO of Blockchain Global Limited, which offers one of Australia’s largest cryptocurrency exchanges, blockchain consulting and blockchain incubation services, assisting with over \$200m in blockchain related investments with offices in Melbourne, New York, Kobe, Shanghai and Dalian.

Mr Lee is a frequent speaker at Blockchain Summits, DLT Conferences and has been a panellist at the World Economic Forum. Mr Lee is also a Director of ASX listed DigitalX Limited (DCC), a leading blockchain advisory company.

Directors who held office during the year

Names of directors who vacated their roles during the year are as follows;

Dr Malcolm R. Brandon, BScAgr, PhD *(Non-Executive) Resigned January 30, 2018*

Dr Brandon was appointed to the Board on October 5, 2009 and as its Chairman on November 28, 2012.

Mr Eutillio Buccilli *(Executive) Stepped Down as CEO and Director on February 6, 2018*

Mr Buccilli was appointed to the Board in June 2015. He joined the Company in June 2014 as Chief Financial Officer. In November 2014, he was appointed to the position of Chief Operating Officer and Chief Financial Officer and was subsequently appointed Chief Executive Officer in February 2015.

Mr Grahame Leonard AM, BA (Hons), LLB, CA, CPA, FAICD (Dip), AFAIM *(Non-Executive) Resigned January 30, 2018*

Mr Leonard was appointed to the Board on November 29, 2013 and also served as Chairman of the Company’s Audit Committee.

Senior Management

We have a professional team of qualified and experienced personnel, including a number of research and development scientists and technicians. The Group currently has 15 full-time-equivalent employees in addition to the 2 part time executive Directors and three Non-executive Directors listed above. Of the total number of personnel, three have Doctorate qualifications. In addition to the interim part time Chief Executive Officer and Business Development Director, Dr Kasian and Dr Muchnicki respectively whose details are noted above, the members of the Company’s Senior Leadership Team as of the date of this Report, and a brief summary of their relevant experience, are as follows:

Kevin Fischer, FCPA, FGIA, FCIS, B. Com. *(Chief Financial Officer)*

Mr. Fischer was appointed Company Secretary on January 13, 2016 following his appointment as Chief Financial Officer on November 2, 2015. He has over ten years’ experience in senior finance roles with successful diagnostic companies, such as QIAGEN and Cellectis. Mr. Fischer is a Fellow CPA and Chartered Secretary who has significant experience in the financial management and reporting for international operations.

Dr. Richard Allman, PhD *(Scientific Director)*

Dr. Allman joined the Company in 2004 and was appointed as Scientific Director in December 2012. He has over 20 years of scientific and research experience in both the academic arena in the UK and the commercial sector in Australia. He has wide experience in research leadership, innovation management, and intellectual property strategy, covering oncology, diagnostics, and product development. Prior to entering the biotech sector, Dr. Allman’s academic career encompassed oncology research, drug development, and assay design.

Item 6.B Compensation

Details of the nature and amount of each major element of the compensation of each director of the Company and each of the named officers of the Company and its subsidiaries, for services in all capacities during the financial year ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 are listed below. All figures are stated in Australian dollars (AUD).

Name and title of	Year	Short-term		Post-employment Superannuation*	Other long- term benefits	Share-based Options	Totals
		Salary/fees	Other				
Non-Executive Directors		\$	\$	\$	\$	\$	\$
Dr Lindsay Wakefield	2018	57,186	—	5,433	—	—	62,619
	2017	56,065	—	5,326	—	—	61,391
Mr Peter Rubinstein (1)	2018	23,827	—	2,264	—	—	26,091
	2017	—	—	—	—	—	—
Mr Xue Lee (2)	2018	23,827	—	2,264	—	—	26,091
	2017	—	—	—	—	—	—
Dr Malcolm R. Brandon(3)	2018	54,198	—	5,149	—	—	59,347
	2017	91,089	—	8,653	—	—	99,742
Grahame Leonard AM (4)	2018	33,358	—	3,169	—	—	36,527
	2017	56,065	—	5,326	—	—	61,391
Totals	2018	192,396	—	18,279	—	—	210,675
	2017	203,219	—	19,305	—	—	222,524

- (1) Mr Rubinstein was appointed as a Non-executive Director on January 31, 2018.
- (2) Mr Lee was appointed as a Non-executive Director on January 31, 2018.
- (3) Dr Brandon resigned as the Non-executive Chairman on January 30, 2018.
- (4) Mr Leonard resigned as a Director on January 30, 2018.

Key Management Personnel

Name and title of Executives Directors	Year	Short-term		Post-employment Superannuation*	Other long-term benefits**	Share-based Options ***	Termination benefits	Totals
		Salary/fees \$	Other \$					
Dr Paul Kasian (1) Chairman & Interim CEO	2018	89,099	—	8,464	44	—	—	97,607
	2017	56,065	—	5,326	—	—	—	61,391
Dr Jerzy Muchnicki (2) Business Development Director	2018	38,051	—	3,615	1,200	—	—	42,866
	2017	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Eutillio Buccilli (3) Ex - Executive Director & Chief Executive Officer	2018	186,621	—	25,000	802	45,639	164,760	422,822
	2017	313,650	33,000	32,566	19,297	45,639	—	444,152
Executives								
Diana Newport (4) Quality & Ops. Director	2018	73,469	—	6,980	(10,137)	18,257	—	88,569
	2017	105,493	—	10,022	10,962	10,533	—	137,010
Dr Richard Allman (5) Scientific Director	2018	165,294	49,588	16,472	(1,370)	23,407	—	253,391
	2017	162,053	8,100	16,526	12,528	17,287	—	216,494
Kevin Fischer (6) Chief Financial Officer	2018	171,666	51,500	17,505	3,187	28,450	—	272,308
	2017	168,300	12,600	17,575	9,421	22,330	—	230,226
Chris Saunders (7) US-VP Sales & Marketing	2018	156,403	—	—	6,778	17,782	—	180,963
	2017	283,402	14,832	—	7,408	22,330	—	327,972
Dr Susan Gross (8) US-Senior Medical Director	2018	41,545	—	—	1,867	(3,150)	—	40,262
	2017	165,262	7,481	—	1,978	3,150	—	177,871
Sub-totals for Executives	2018	922,148	101,088	78,036	2,371	130,385	164,760	1,398,788
	2017	1,254,225	76,013	82,015	61,594	121,269	—	1,595,116
Total remuneration of Key Management Personnel	2018	1,114,544	101,088	96,315	2,371	130,385	164,760	1,609,463
	2017	1,457,444	76,013	101,320	61,594	121,269	—	1,817,640

Notes pertaining to changes during the year:

- (1) Dr Kasian was appointed as the Chairman on January 31, 2018 and interim CEO on February 6, 2018, having previously served as a Non-Executive Director since his appointment in December 2013. Included in the 2018 total remuneration is an amount of \$18,689 attributable to his executive role as interim CEO (2017: Nil). The 2017 fees are all Non-Executive Director fees.
- (2) Dr Muchnicki was appointed as Business Development Director on January 31, 2018. Included in the 2018 total remuneration is an amount of \$16,774 attributable to his executive role as Business Development Director
- (3) Mr Buccilli stepped down from his position of Executive Director and Chief Executive officer on February 6, 2018. Included in the termination benefits paid to Mr Buccilli are ; 3 months’ notice pay: pro-rata bonus entitlement calculated up to that date being 3 months from February 6, 2018.
- (4) Ms Newport held the role of Quality & Operations Director until her resignation on May 1, 2018.
- (5) “Other” includes a bonus paid or payable to Dr Allman in the amount of \$49,588 under a retention bonus scheme awarded to KMP.
- (6) “Other” includes a bonus paid or payable to Mr Fischer in the amount of \$51,500 under a retention bonus scheme awarded to KMP.

[Table of Contents](#)

(7) Mr Saunders held the role of Vice President Sales & Marketing for Phenogen Sciences Inc. (USA) until his termination on November 30, 2017

(8) Dr Gross held the role of Senior Medical Director for Phenogen Sciences Inc. (USA) until her termination on September 15, 2017.

Referencing the previous two tables:

- * Post-employment benefits as per Corporations Regulation 2M.3.03 (1) Item 7
- ** Other long-term benefits as per Corporations Regulation 2M.3.03 (1) Item 8
- *** Equity settled share-based payments as per Corporations Regulation 2M.3.03 (1) Item 11

The details of those Executives nominated as Key Management Personnel under section 300A of the *Corporations Act 2001* have been disclosed in this Report. No other employees of the Company meet the definition of “Key Management Personnel” as defined in *IAS 24 / (AASB 124) Related Party Disclosures*, or “senior manager” as defined in the *Corporations Act*

Executive officers are those officers who were involved during the year in the strategic direction, general management or control of the business at a company or operating division level. The remuneration paid to Executives is set with reference to prevailing market levels and comprises a fixed salary, various short term incentives (which are linked to agreed key performance indicators), and an option component. Options are granted to Executives in line with their respective levels of experience and responsibility.

Options exercised, granted, and forfeited as part of remuneration during the year ended June 30, 2018

Details of the options held by the Executives nominated as Key Management Personnel during the year ended June 30, 2018 are set out below. As at June 30, 2018, there were 3 executives and 1 employee who held options that had been granted under the Company’s respective option plans.

During the 2018 financial year no options granted as equity compensation benefits to Executives were exercised, and no new options were granted as equity compensation benefits to Executives. The following options previously granted as equity compensation benefits to Executives were forfeited during the year;

Name of Executive	Options Forfeited	Exercise price	Fair value per option	Final vesting date
Diana Newport	4,000,000	\$ 0.01	\$ 0.0050	Feb 16, 2022
Diana Newport	2,500,000	\$ 0.02	\$ 0.0026	Mar 31, 2021
Chris Saunders	5,000,000	\$ 0.01	\$ 0.0050	Feb 16, 2022
Chris Saunders	5,000,000	\$ 0.02	\$ 0.0024	Nov 24, 2020
Dr. Susan Gross	2,500,000	\$ 0.01	\$ 0.0050	Feb 16, 2022
Totals	19,000,000			

Options exercised, granted and forfeited as part of remuneration during the year ended June 30, 2017

During the 2017 financial year 21,500,000 options were granted as equity compensation benefits to Executives. No options were exercised or forfeited.

Fair values of options

Fair values at grant date are independently determined using a Black-Scholes option pricing model that takes into account the exercise price, the term of the option, the share price at grant date and expected price volatility of the underlying share, the expected divided yield and the risk-free interest rate for the term of the option.

Option holdings of Key Management Personnel June 30, 2018

Name of option holder	Opening balance	Number of options			Closing balance	Vesting as at year end		Financial year in which options vest	Fair Value yet to vest \$
		Granted	Exercised	Lapsed		Exercisable	Not exercisable		
Executive									
Paul Kasian	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Jerzy Muchnicki*	6,666,667	—	—	—	6,666,667	6,666,667	—	2015	—
Eutillio Buccilli	14,236,111	—	—	—	14,236,111	14,236,111	—	2018	—
Diana Newport	6,500,000	—	—	(6,500,000)	—	—	—	—	—
Richard Allman	10,000,000	—	—	—	10,000,000	6,666,667	3,333,333	2019	16,667
Kevin Fischer	10,000,000	—	—	—	10,000,000	6,666,667	3,333,333	2019	16,667
Chris Saunders	10,000,000	—	—	(10,000,000)	—	—	—	—	—
Susan Gross	2,500,000	—	—	(2,500,000)	—	—	—	—	—
Totals	59,902,778	—	—	(19,000,000)	40,902,778	34,236,112	6,666,666		33,334

* Options held by Dr Muchnicki when appointed as a Director on January 31, 2018

Option holdings of Key Management Personnel June 30, 2017

Name of option holder	Opening balance	Number of options			Closing balance	Vesting as at year end		Financial year in which options vest	Fair Value yet to vest \$
		Granted	Exercised	Lapsed		Exercisable	Not exercisable		
Executive									
Eutillio Buccilli	14,236,111	—	—	—	14,236,111	7,118,055	7,118,056	2018	90,777
Diana Newport	2,500,000	4,000,000	—	—	6,500,000	1,250,000	5,250,000	2019	30,719
Richard Allman	5,000,000	5,000,000	—	—	10,000,000	2,500,000	7,500,000	2019	46,438
Kevin Fischer	5,000,000	5,000,000	—	—	10,000,000	2,500,000	7,500,000	2019	56,883
Chris Saunders	5,000,000	5,000,000	—	—	10,000,000	2,500,000	7,500,000	2019	56,883
Susan Gross	—	2,500,000	—	—	2,500,000	—	2,500,000	2019	20,000
Totals	31,736,111	21,500,000	—	—	53,236,111	15,868,055	37,368,056		301,700

* Options vest and are exercisable at any time after the date on which they meet the vesting conditions as described above

Options

We introduced a Staff Share Plan on November 30, 2001. On November 19, 2008, the shareholders of the Company approved the introduction of a new Employee Option Plan. Collectively, these Plans establish the eligibility of our employees and those of any subsidiaries, and of consultants and independent contractors to a participating company who are declared by the Board to be eligible, to participate. Broadly speaking, the respective Plans permits us, at the discretion of the Board, to issue traditional options (with an exercise price). The Plans conform to the IFSA Executive Share and Option Scheme Guidelines and, where participation is to be made available to staff who reside outside Australia, there may have to be modifications to the terms of grant to meet or better comply with local laws or practice.

As of June 30, 2018, there were 3 executives and 1 employee who held options that had been granted under the Company’s respective option plans. Options issued under the Plan carry no rights to dividends and no voting rights.

Options issued under the Plans during the following financial years are as follows:

Year ended June 30, 2016:

During the year ended June 30, 2016, a total of 33,736,111 options over the Company’s ordinary shares were issued to certain employees of the Group as follows;

Key Management Personnel (KMP)- see above for more details; During the year there were two issues of options to KMP — the first being 24,236,111 options that were issued at no charge, and entitle the holder to acquire one ordinary share in the Company at an exercise price of \$0.02 each up to, and including, November 24, 2020. The second issue was of 7,500,000 options that were issued at no charge, and entitle the holder to acquire one ordinary share in the Company at an exercise price of \$0.02 each up to, and including, March 31, 2021. All options granted to KMP during 2016 are exercisable at any time after

[Table of Contents](#)

the date on which the Option meets its vesting conditions, namely the 3 month volume weighted average price (VWAP) of shares as traded on the ASX as follows (subject to any adjustments in the vesting conditions as contained in the option terms) - further details as described in the preceding section.

Other — employees of Phenogen Sciences Inc.: During the year there were two issues of options to other employees of the Group — the first being 1,500,000 options that were issued at no charge, and entitle the holder to acquire one ordinary share in the Company at an exercise price of \$0.058 each up to, and including, September 14, 2020. The second issue was of 500,000 options that were issued at no charge, and entitle the holder to acquire one ordinary share in the Company at an exercise price of \$0.039 each up to, and including, January 31, 2021. All options granted to these employees during 2016 are exercisable in three equal tranches after 12 months, 24 months and 36 months from the date of grant, respectively.

During the 2016 financial year, no options were exercised and 4,125,000 options that had previously been issued to employees were forfeited. Option holders do not have any right, by virtue of their options, to participate in any share issue of the Company or any related body corporate.

Year ended June 30, 2017:

During the year ended June 30, 2017, a total of 22,750,000 options over the Company's ordinary shares were issued to certain employees of the Group as follows;

Key Management Personnel (KMP) - see above for more details; 21,500,000 options were issued to KMP in February 2017. The options were issued at no charge, and entitle the holder to acquire one ordinary share in the Company at an exercise price of \$0.01 each up to, and including February 16, 2022. The options vest based on non-market performance conditions (requirement to remain employed by the Company) in three tranches commencing on the date of the 2017 Annual General Meeting (AGM) of the Company and then at each of the 12 and 24 month anniversaries thereafter. The fair value of each option granted is estimated by an external valuer using a Black-Scholes option-pricing model — further details as described in the preceding section

Other — employees of Phenogen Sciences Inc.: During the year 1,250,000 options were issued to a number of employees of the Company's US Subsidiary, Phenogen Sciences Inc. The options were issued at no charge, and entitle the holder to acquire one ordinary share in the Company at an exercise price of \$0.01 each up to, and including February 16, 2022. The options vest based on non-market performance conditions (requirement to remain employed by the Company) in three equal tranches commencing on the date of the 2017 Annual General Meeting (AGM) of the Company and then at each of the 12 and 24 month anniversaries thereafter. The fair value of each option granted is estimated by an external valuer using a Black-Scholes option-pricing model.

During the 2017 financial year, no options were exercised and 1,500,000 options that had previously been issued to employees were forfeited. Option holders do not have any right, by virtue of their options, to participate in any share issue of the Company or any related body corporate.

Year ended June 30, 2018:

During the 2018 financial year, no options over ordinary shares pursuant to the Employee Option Plan were granted or exercised and 20,000,000 options that had previously been issued to employees were forfeited. Option holders do not have any right, by virtue of their options, to participate in any share issue of the Company or any related body corporate.

As of the date of this Annual Report, there was a total of 34,736,111 unlisted employee options outstanding.

Options granted under the Employee Option Plan carry no rights to dividends and no voting rights and generally have an expiry date of nearly five years from the date of grant.

During the years ended June 30, 2018, 2017 and 2016, the Company recorded a share-based payments expense in respect of the options granted of \$129,635, \$ 120,287 and \$50,239.

This share based payment expense is included within selling and marketing costs, general and administrative costs, licensing, patent and legal costs, and laboratory research and development costs in the statement of comprehensive income/ (loss). The following is additional information relating to the options granted under the respective Plans as of June 30, 2018:

Range of exercise prices	Options outstanding			Options exercisable	
	Number of options	Weighted average exercise price	Remaining weighted average contractual life (years)	Number of options	Weighted average exercise price
\$0.01 - \$0.10	34,736,111	\$ 0.017	2.83	27,736,111	\$ 0.019
\$0.11 - \$0.20	—	\$ —	—	—	\$ —
	<u>34,736,111</u>	<u>\$ 0.017</u>	<u>2.83</u>	<u>27,736,111</u>	<u>\$ 0.019</u>

The following is additional information relating to the options granted under the respective Plans as of June 30, 2017:

Range of exercise prices	Options outstanding			Options exercisable	
	Number of options	Weighted average exercise price	Remaining weighted average contractual life (years)	Number of options	Weighted average exercise price
\$0.01 - \$0.10	54,736,111	\$ 0.016	3.96	15,868,056	\$ 0.020
\$0.11 - \$0.20	—	\$ —	—	—	\$ —
	<u>54,736,111</u>	<u>\$ 0.016</u>	<u>3.96</u>	<u>15,868,056</u>	<u>\$ 0.020</u>

The following is additional information relating to the options granted under the respective Plans as of June 30, 2016:

Range of exercise prices	Options outstanding			Options exercisable	
	Number of options	Weighted average exercise price	Remaining weighted average contractual life (years)	Number of options	Weighted average exercise price
\$0.01 - \$0.10	33,486,111	\$ 0.022	4.47	83,333	\$ 0.040
\$0.11 - \$0.20	—	\$ —	—	—	\$ —
	<u>33,486,111</u>	<u>\$ 0.022</u>	<u>4.47</u>	<u>83,333</u>	<u>\$ 0.040</u>

The fair value for the options issued to employees was estimated at the date of grant using either a Monte Carlo simulation analysis or Black-Scholes option pricing valuation model;

Key Management Personnel (KMP) — with the following range of assumptions for June 30:

	2018	2017	2016
Risk Free Interest Rate	—	2.19%	1.93% to 2.22%
Expected Dividend Yield	—	—	—
Historic and Expected Volatility	—	60%	80%
Option Exercise Prices	—	\$0.010	\$0.020
Weighted Average Exercise Price	—	\$0.010	\$0.020
Expected Lives	—	4.50 years	4.50 years
Valuation Model	—	Black-Scholes	Monte Carlo

Other — employees of Phenogen Sciences Inc.: with the following range of assumptions for June 30:

	2018	2017	2016
Risk Free Interest Rate	—	2.19%	1.93% to 2.22%
Expected Dividend Yield	—	—	—
Historic and Expected Volatility	—	60%	80%
Option Exercise Prices	—	\$0.010	\$0.039 to \$0.058
Weighted Average Exercise Price	—	\$0.010	\$0.053
Expected Lives	—	4.50 years	4.40 years
Valuation Model	—	Black-Scholes	Black-Scholes

Indemnification and Insurance with respect to Directors

We are obligated pursuant to an indemnity agreement, to indemnify the current Directors and executive officers and former Directors against all liabilities to third parties that may arise from their position as Directors or officers of the Company and our controlled entities, except where to do so would be prohibited by law. In addition, we currently carry insurance in respect of Directors’ and officers’ liabilities for current and former Directors, Company Secretary and executive officers or employees.

Item 6.C Board Practices

The Board of Directors

Under our Constitution, our Board of Directors is required to comprise at least three Directors. As of the date of this Annual Report, our Board comprised five Directors.

The role of the Board includes:

- (a) Reviewing and making recommendations in remuneration packages and policies applicable to directors, senior executives and consultants.
- (b) Nomination of external auditors and reviewing the adequacy of external audit arrangements.
- (c) Establishing the overall internal control framework over financial reporting, quality and integrity of personnel and investment appraisal. In establishing an appropriate framework, the board recognized that no cost effective internal control systems will preclude all errors and irregularities.
- (d) Establishing and maintaining appropriate ethical standards in dealings with business associates, suppliers, advisers and regulators, competitors, the community and other employees.
- (e) Identifying areas of significant business risk and implementing corrective action as soon as practicable after a risk is identified.
- (f) Nominating of audit and remuneration committee members.

The Board meets to discuss business regularly throughout the year, with additional meetings being held when circumstances warrant. Included in the table below are details of the meetings of the Board and the sub-committees of the Board that were held during the 2018 financial year.

	Directors’ meetings		Audit Committee meetings		Remuneration Committee meetings	
	Attended	Eligible	Attended	Eligible	Attended	Eligible
Dr Malcolm Brandon	9	9	—	—	—	—
Mr. Eutillio Buccilli	9	9	—	—	2	2
Mr. Grahame Leonard A.M.	8	9	2	3	—	—
Dr Paul Kasian	15	15	3	3	3	3
Dr Lindsay Wakefield	15	15	5	5	3	3
Dr. Jerzy Muchnicki	6	6	2	2	—	—
Mr. Peter Rubinstein	6	6	2	2	1	1
Mr Xue Lee	3	6	—	—	—	—

Committees of the Board

The Board has established an Audit Committee which operates under a specific Charter approved by the Board. It is the Board’s responsibility to ensure that an effective internal control framework exists within the entity. This includes internal controls to deal with both the effectiveness and efficiency of significant business processes, the safeguarding of assets, the maintenance of proper accounting records, and the reliability of financial information as well as non-financial considerations such as the benchmarking of operational key performance indicators.

The Board has delegated the responsibility for the establishment and maintenance of a framework of internal control and ethical standards for the management of the Group to the Audit Committee. The Audit Committee also provides the Board with assurance regarding the reliability of financial information for inclusion in the financial reports. As at date of this report, all of the members of the Audit Committee are independent Non-Executive Directors.

The Remuneration Committee is, amongst other things, responsible for determining and reviewing remuneration arrangements for the Directors, the Chief Executive Officer and the Senior Leadership Team. The majority of the Committee is comprised of independent directors.

The Remuneration Committee assesses the appropriateness of the nature and amount of remuneration paid to Directors and Executives on a periodic basis by reference to relevant employment market conditions, with the overall objective of ensuring maximum shareholder benefit from the retention of a high quality Board and Senior Leadership Team.

Committee membership

As at the date of this Report, the composition of these two Sub-Committees are:

Audit Committee:	Mr Peter Rubinstein — Chairman of the Committee Dr Lindsay Wakefield Mr Sam Lee
Remuneration Committee:	Dr Lindsay Wakefield — Chairman of the Committee Dr Paul Kasian Mr Peter Rubinstein

Compliance with NASDAQ Rules

NASDAQ listing rules require that we disclose the home country practices that we will follow in lieu of compliance with NASDAQ corporate governance rules. The following describes the home country practices and the related NASDAQ rule:

Majority of Independent Directors: We follow home country practice rather than NASDAQ’s requirement in Marketplace Rule 4350(c) (1) that the majority of the Board of each issuer be comprised of independent directors as defined in Marketplace Rule 4200. As of the date of this Annual Report, our Board of Directors does not comprise of a majority of independent directors. The Company intends to review its composition in the future as operations expand; however, the Company believes that the current Board structure is best suited to enable the Company to deliver shareholder value.

Compensation of Officers: We follow home country practice rather than NASDAQ’s requirement in Marketplace Rule 4350 (c)(3) that chief executive compensation be determined or recommended to the Board by the majority of independent directors or a compensation committee of independent directors. Similarly, compensation of other officers is not determined or recommended to the Board by a majority of the independent directors or a compensation committee comprised solely of independent directors. These decisions are made by our remuneration committee which at June 30, 2018 is not comprised of a majority of independent directors. The members are however considered by the Board to currently be the “best fit” for the committee taking into account the current Board composition. As the operations of the Company develop, the Board will reassess the composition of the Remuneration Committee.

Nomination: We follow home country practice rather than NASDAQ’s requirement in Marketplace Rule 4350(c)(4) that director nominees be selected or recommended by a majority of the independent directors or by a nominations committee comprised of independent directors. These decisions are made by our full Board which is comprised of a majority of independent directors. The ASX does not have a requirement that each listed issuer have a nominations committee or otherwise follow the procedures embodied in NASDAQ’s Marketplace Rule. Furthermore, no law, rule or regulation of the ASIC has such a requirement nor does the applicable

[Table of Contents](#)

corporate law legislation. Accordingly, selections or recommendations of director nominees by a committee that is not comprised of a majority of directors that are not independent is not prohibited by the laws of Australia.

Quorum: We follow home country practice rather than NASDAQ’s requirement in Marketplace Rule 4350(f) that each issuer provide for a quorum of at least 33 1/3 percent of the outstanding shares of the issuer’s ordinary stock (voting stock). Pursuant to our Constitution we are currently required to have a quorum for a general meeting of three persons. The practice followed by us is not prohibited by Australian law.

Shareholder Approval for Capital Issuance: We have elected to follow certain home country practices in lieu of NASDAQ Marketplace Rule 5635. For example, the Company is entitled to an annual 15% of capital placement capacity under ASX Listing Rule 7.1 without shareholder approval. If this amount of annual entitlement is aggregated with an additional placement of ordinary shares, including through the grant of options over ordinary shares, that exceeds 20% of the outstanding share capital, only the excess over the 15% annual allowance requires shareholder approval under Australian law. Such home country practice is not prohibited by the laws of Australia.

Item 6.D Employees

As of the date of this Annual Report, the Group comprising the Company and its subsidiaries, employed 16 full-time equivalent employees. The number of full-time equivalent employees as of the end of each respective financial year ended June 30 are as follows:

2018	15
2017	20
2016	25

Item 6.E Share Ownership

The relevant interest of the directors in the share capital of the Company as notified by them to the Australian Securities Exchange in accordance with section 205G(1) of the *Corporations Act 2001* as of the date of this Annual Report is as follows:

Director	Ordinary shares	Percentage of Capital held
Dr. Paul Kasian	256,410	0.010%
Dr. Lindsay Wakefield	7,754,763	0.305%
Dr. Jerzy Muchnicki	20,903,244	0.822%
Mr. Peter Rubinstein	47,282,700	1.859%

Notes: Dr Wakefield also has a direct interest in 570,500 shares, and Mr Lee has a direct interest in 59,594,850 ordinary shares (represented by 397,299 American Depositary Receipts). Apart from the above, no Director holds any interest in the shares and options of the Company as at the date of this Report.

Item 7. Major Shareholders and Related Party Transactions

Item 7.A Major Shareholders

As at the date of this Annual Report, there are no shareholders who are the beneficial owner of 5% or more of our voting securities;

The number of Ordinary Shares on issue in Genetic Technologies as of the date of this Annual Report was 2,544,115,824. The number of holders of Ordinary Shares in Genetic Technologies as of the date of this Annual Report was approximately 4,472.

The Company is not aware of any direct or indirect ownership or control of it by another corporation(s), by any foreign government or by any other natural or legal person(s) severally or jointly. Principal shareholders do not enjoy any special or different voting rights from those to which other holders of Ordinary Shares are entitled. The Company does not know of any arrangements, the operation of which may at a subsequent date result in a change in control of the Company.

Item 7.B Related Party Transactions

During the year ended June 30, 2018, the only transactions between entities within the Group and other related parties occurred, are as listed below. Except where noted, all amounts were charged on similar to market terms and at commercial rates.

Debt convertible notes

During the year ended June 30, 2015 the Company finalized the raising of \$2,150,000 via the issue of unlisted secured (debt) notes to existing and new Australian institutional and wholesale investors. The debt notes carried a 10.0% coupon rate, and as approved at the

[Table of Contents](#)

Annual General Meeting, held on 25 November 2014, became convertible notes which could convert into ordinary shares (at a 10.0% discount to the 5 day VWAP). These convertible notes also carry free attached options to purchase further shares in the Company.

\$125,000 of these convertible notes were issued to a holder associated with Dr Lindsay Wakefield, a Company director at the time of issue, on the same terms and conditions as other note holders, all of which were converted during the year ended June 30, 2015. The 8,333,333 share options attached to these convertible notes remain unexercised at June 30, 2018. Dr Muchnicki and Mr Rubinstein, both of whom were elected as Directors of the Company on January 31, 2018, also participated in the debt convertible notes raising, and at June 30, 2018 indirectly held 6,666,667 and 5,000,000 options respectively.

Blockchain Global Limited

As announced by the Company on February 15, 2018, a non-binding terms sheet with Blockchain Global Limited (**BCG**) was entered to provide a framework for continuing discussions between the two companies, with the proposed transaction being subject to shareholder approval (by non-associated Shareholders); and as announced by the Company on August 2, 2018, a framework agreement with BCG was entered formalizing the non-binding terms sheet and providing a framework for a strategic alliance between the Company and BCG, with this Framework Agreement only becoming binding on the Company obtaining the approval of non-associated Shareholders. This framework includes a proposed issuance of 486,000,000 shares to BCG in 3 tranches subject to the achievement of certain milestones.

A number of Directors of the Company presently or previously have had involvement with BCG. Mr Sam Lee has a direct and indirect share interest in BCG of 21% and is a director of BCG. Mr Peter Rubinstein has a direct and indirect share interest in BCG of 8% and is a consultant to BCG. Dr George Muchnicki has a direct and indirect share interest in BCG of 3.4%. Dr Paul Kasian was previously a director of BCG until July 2018. No transactions between the Company and BCG took place during the year ended June 30, 2018.

There were no transactions with parties related to Key Management Personnel during the year other than that disclosed above.

Item 7.C Interests of Experts and Counsel

Not applicable.

Item 8. Financial Information

Item 8.A Consolidated Statements and Other Financial Information

The information included in Item 18 of this Annual Report is referred to and referenced into this Item 8.A.

Litigation and other legal proceedings

Australian Federal Court Patent Proceeding

In June 2010, a group of Australian plaintiffs initiated litigation in the Australian Federal Court challenging the validity of certain claims of an Australian patent owned by Myriad Genetics Inc. (Australian patent 686004 - “‘004”). Genetic Technologies was named as a respondent to this matter by virtue of the fact that Genetic Technologies was the exclusive licensee of the BRCA patents in Australia (which includes the ‘004 patent).

This matter bears a striking resemblance to the US litigation filed by the American Civil Liberties Union against Myriad’s US patent equivalent in which a US Federal District Court ruled that isolated DNA sequences are not eligible for patent protection because of the fact that they are “products of nature”. On July 29, 2011, Myriad successfully appealed this decision with the Federal Circuit Court of Appeals reversing the decision of the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York. On March 26, 2012 the U.S. Supreme Court remanded the case back to the US Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit for reconsideration. On August 16, 2012, the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit ruled on the Myriad in the U.S., upholding the patentability of gene patents. On June 13, 2013, the U.S. Supreme Court allowed an appeal, and found that claims for isolated genomic DNA were invalid.

On September 30, 2011, Genetic Technologies filed documents with the Australian Federal Court to the effect that the Company submits to the orders of the Court and takes no further part in the proceedings. On February 15, 2013, the Australian Federal Court ruled in favor of Myriad Genetics in this matter.

Myriad Genetics argued that by virtue of the process of extracting the gene from the body, it had satisfied the requirements of an “invention” according to section 18(1) (a) of the Patents Act which states that an invention must be a “manner of manufacture”. Based on previous case law, the Court held that a “manner of manufacture” requires an “artificial state of affairs” of some discernible effect that is of economic significance.

[Table of Contents](#)

That decision was subsequently appealed by one of the plaintiffs on March 4, 2013. The Full Federal Court again ruled in favour of Myriad Genetics on September 5, 2014. The decision by the court leaves intact its earlier ruling that isolated gene sequences, even if they contain the same information as DNA sequences in the body, become a manufactured object as a result of the isolation process, conferring on them an “artificial state”, and making them patentable.

On September 16, 2014, the plaintiff sought special leave to appeal from the Full Federal Court’s decision to the High Court of Australia, which was granted on February 13, 2015. The plaintiff filed a formal appeal to the High Court shortly thereafter, on February 27, 2015. Genetic Technologies did not contest the special leave application or the appeal to the High Court.

On October 7, 2015 the High Court found claims 1 to 3 (directed to isolated gene sequences) of the ‘004 patent invalid. The High Court held that whether or not an invention is an “artificial state of affairs” is not the only factor relevant to whether a patent defines a manner of manufacture. The High Court took into account a number of other policy considerations, including:

- a. whether patentability of the invention is consistent with the overarching purposes of the Patents Act (i.e., stimulating, rather than chilling, innovation);
- b. whether patentability of the invention would enhance or detract from the coherence of the law relating to inherent patentability;
- c. whether patentability of the invention is consistent with Australia’s international obligations and the patent laws of other countries; and
- d. whether patentability of the class of invention as claimed would involve law-making of a kind that should be done by the legislature;

before concluding that claims 1 to 3 of the ‘004 patent did not define a manner of manufacture.

The challenge by the plaintiffs did not affect the validity of the remaining claims (4-30) of the ‘004 Patent. While the ‘004 patent reached the end of its 20 year term and therefore expired on August 11, 2015, similar claims in other, subsisting patents (including those directed to probes and methods for diagnostic testing relating to specific genes) remain enforceable, affording a monopoly over many uses of gene sequences.

Dividends

Until our businesses are profitable beyond our expected research and development needs, our Directors are unlikely to be able to recommend that any dividend be paid to our shareholders. Our Directors will not resolve a formal dividend policy until we generate profits. Our current intention is to reinvest our income in the continued development and expansion of our businesses.

Item 8.B Significant Changes to Financial Information

Our consolidated financial statements are set out on pages F1 to F39 of this Annual Report (refer to Item 18).

Significant other changes

- A reduced physical headcount in the US as the Company transitioned the BREVAGen^{plus}® commercial programme from a direct salesforce to an ecommerce based solution. Under the new program, it is planned that the consumer will be able to initiate the testing by accessing the Consumer Initiated Testing (CIT) platform via the Company’s U.S. subsidiary, Phenogen Sciences, Inc. website.
- On February 2, 2018, the Company entered into a non-binding terms sheet with Blockchain Global Limited (BCG), which outlined a proposed strategic alliance between the parties with respect to the provision of a suite of blockchain opportunities to the Company to leverage off its existing genetics testing platform, existing CLIA approved laboratory and long history in genomics, along with BCG’s extensive blockchain experience, with the proposed issue of 486,000,000 shares to BCG in 3 tranches subject to the achievement of certain milestones. Although subject to final shareholder approval, the strategic alliance has subsequently been formalized through a Framework Agreement, executed between the parties on August 2, 2018.

Changes to the Board of Directors

The following changes to the Board of Directors took place during the year ended June 30, 2018;

- Dr Malcolm R Brandon — resigned January 30, 2018
- Mr Grahame Leonard — resigned January 30, 2018
- Mr Peter Rubinstein — appointed January 31, 2018
- Dr George Muchnicki — appointed January 31, 2018
- Mr Sam Lee — appointed January 31, 2018
- Mr Eutillio Buccilli — resigned February 6, 2018

Significant events after balance date

The following significant events have occurred after balance date;

- The Company has renewed the lease agreement for its Fitzroy premises in Melbourne for a further period of 3 years from September 1, 2018 to August 31, 2021. The Company has also entered into a 2 year lease for new premises in Charlotte, North Carolina, commencing July 23, 2018 to July 31, 2020.
- A Framework Agreement with Blockchain Global Limited (“**BCG**”) was entered into on August 2, 2018. The Agreement formalizes the non-binding terms sheet that was entered into between the parties on February 2, 2018, which outlined a proposed strategic alliance with respect to the provision of a suite of blockchain opportunities to the Company, with the proposed issue of 486,000,000 shares to BCG in 3 tranches subject to the achievement of certain milestones.
- On August 8, 2018, the Company executed an Equity Placement Facility with Kentgrove Capital Pty Ltd. Under the Facility, Kentgrove Capital may provide the Company with up to A\$20 million of equity capital in a series of individual placements of up to \$1 million (or a higher amount by mutual agreement) over the next 20 months. Following the execution of the Facility and under a Prospectus as lodged with ASIC, the Company has issued:
 - 12,500,000 Options, exercisable at \$0.0153 each, expiring 3 years after issue (Establishment Options), to Kentgrove Capital Pty Ltd in its capacity as trustee of the Kentgrove Capital Growth Fund (Kentgrove) (Option Offer).
 - 8,833,100 Shares (Establishment Shares) to Kentgrove in lieu of payment of an Establishment Fee (Establishment Share Offer).
 - 100,000,000 Shares (Collateral Shares) to Kentgrove as security for the Company’s obligations under the equity placement facility with Kentgrove.

The issue of the establishment and collateral shares to Kentgrove has resulted in an increase of the issued share capital of the Company to 2,544,115,824.

Under the lodged Prospectus, the Company will also have the ability to offer and issue up to 441,655,004 Placement Shares either to Kentgrove under the Kentgrove Facility, or to other investors as determined by the Board, to raise up to \$5,000,000. Prospectus currently has a closing date of November 9, 2018. Since June 30 2018, the Company has issued 100,000,000 shares under this facility, resulting in cash inflows from financing of \$1,350,000.

- Following the recommendation of the Remuneration Committee, and subsequent Board approval in July 2018, the Board has agreed to award the Directors’ of the Company Share Options pursuant to the Company’s Employee Share Option Plan. Subject to Shareholder approval, the quantum of the award, ranging in value from \$75k to \$150k will be aligned to the individual Directors responsibilities and activities. In addition, the Board has agreed to grant to Dr Kasian, in his role as interim CEO, 50 million Options subject to certain market related vesting conditions. The issue of such Options will be subject to all necessary Shareholder approvals being obtained.
- The Company has executed an Agreement with Swisstec Health Analytics on July 30, 2018 which sets out the principal commercial terms on which the Company intends to appoint Swisstec as a non-exclusive distributor for hospitals in Asia. In accordance with the terms of this agreement, the Company has acquired a 5% equity stake in Swisstec, and has provided Swisstec with \$250k to facilitate their expansion into hospitals in the Asian region.
- The Company has signed a Heads of Agreement with Beijing Zishan Health Consultancy Limited. The Agreement provides a framework according to which the two parties will explore opportunities to achieve market entry, through a Joint Venture, for GTG’s genomic tests into the health sector in the People’s Republic of China.

Item 9. The Offer and Listing

Item 9.A Offer and Listing Details

The Company’s Ordinary Shares were listed on the Australian Securities Exchange (the “ASX”) in July 1987. Set out below is the highest and lowest market quotations for the Ordinary Shares reported on the Daily Official List of the ASX since July 1, 2011.

[Table of Contents](#)

Financial Year	Period Covered	High	Low
		(in \$0.00)	
Yearly data 2014	Year ended June 30, 2014	0.105	0.035
	2015 Year ended June 30, 2015	0.087	0.012
	2016 Year ended June 30, 2016	0.039	0.016
	2017 Year ended June 30, 2017	0.021	0.007
	2018 Year ended June 30, 2018	0.018	0.006
Quarterly data 2017	Quarter ended September 30, 2016	0.020	0.014
	Quarter ended December 31, 2016	0.021	0.010
	Quarter ended March 31, 2017	0.012	0.009
	Quarter ended June 30, 2017	0.011	0.007
	2018 Quarter ended September 30, 2017	0.008	0.006
	Quarter ended December 31, 2017	0.016	0.007
	Quarter ended March 31, 2018	0.021	0.008
	Quarter ended June 30, 2018	0.015	0.008
Monthly data 2018	Month ended May 31, 2018	0.012	0.009
	Month ended June 30, 2018	0.012	0.008
	Month ended July 31, 2018	0.015	0.010
	Month ended August 31, 2018	0.012	0.009
	Month ended September 30, 2018	0.012	0.010
	Period ended October 24, 2018	0.017	0.010

As of the date of this Annual Report, we had 2,644,115,8244 Ordinary Shares on issue, without par value. See Item 10B “Our Constitution” for a detailed description of the rights attaching to our shares and Item 12D “American Depositary Receipts” for a description of the rights attaching to the American Depositary Shares.

The Company’s securities are also listed on NASDAQ Capital Market (under the ticker GENE) in the form of American Depositary Shares. During January 2015, the Company undertook a reverse stock split (consolidation) which had the effect of resetting the ratio of 1 ADS representing 30 Ordinary shares to 1 ADS representing 150 Ordinary shares. Since listing on the NASDAQ Global Market on September 2, 2005, the ADSs have traded in a range from a low of USD 0.31 to a high of USD 13.85. The most recent sale of the Company’s ADSs, as recorded on October 24, 2018, occurred at a price of USD 1.24.

Following the listing of the Company’s ADRs in September 2005, our Ordinary Shares are registered under Section 12 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and we file an Annual Report with the Securities and Exchange Commission on Form 20-F. As a foreign private issuer, we are not be subject to the proxy rules under Section 14 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, and our officers, Directors and principal stockholders are not subject to the insider short-swing profit disclosure and recovery provisions of Section 16 of that Act.

Starting in January 14, 2002, the ADSs traded in the USA over-the-counter market under the symbol “GNTLY” and dealers’ prices for the ADSs were been quoted in the “pink sheets” published by the National Quotations Bureau, Inc. Commencing on September 2, 2005, our ADSs were listed on the NASDAQ Global Market and, subsequently, the NASDAQ Capital Market, under the ticker “GENE”.

The Company has registered one class of American Depositary Shares (ADSs) on Form F-6 pursuant to the U.S. Securities Act of 1933, as amended. One ADS represents 150 Ordinary Shares without par value. As of June 30, 2018 there was a total of 10,706,141 ADSs outstanding, representing approximately 65.94% of the Company’s total issued capital as of that date.

The table below sets forth the high and low sales prices in United States dollars for the ADSs during the periods indicated:

Financial Year	Period Covered	High	Low
		(in USD)	
Yearly data 2014	Year ended June 30, 2014	1.24	1.00
	2015 Year ended June 30, 2015	11.00	0.31
	2016 Year ended June 30, 2016	4.27	1.62
	2017 Year ended June 30, 2017	2.27	0.75
	2018 Year ended June 30, 2018	2.05	0.70

[Table of Contents](#)

Quarterly data 2017	Quarter ended September 30, 2016	2.27	1.70
	Quarter ended December 31, 2016	2.89	1.04
	Quarter ended March 31, 2017	1.38	1.05
	Quarter ended June 30, 2017	1.27	0.75
2018	Quarter ended September 30, 2017	0.94	0.70
	Quarter ended December 31, 2017	1.79	0.75
	Quarter ended March 31, 2018	2.05	1.02
	Quarter ended June 30, 2018	1.47	0.93
Monthly data 2018	Month ended May 31, 2018	1.38	1.03
	Month ended June 30, 2018	1.21	0.93
	Month ended July 31, 2018	2.04	0.93
	Month ended August 31, 2018	1.22	1.06
	Month ended September 30, 2018	1.18	1.03
	Period ended October 24, 2018	1.48	1.03

Item 9.B Plan of Distribution

Not applicable.

Item 9.C Markets

Effective September 2, 2005, our ADSs were listed on the NASDAQ Global Market under the ticker “GENE”. Effective July 1, 2010, the ADSs were transferred to the NASDAQ Capital Market. The ticker remained unchanged. Our Ordinary Shares are listed and trade on the Australian Securities Exchange under the code “GTG”.

Item 9.D Selling Shareholders

Not applicable.

Item 9.E Dilution

Not applicable.

Item 9.F Expenses of the Issue

Not applicable.

Item 10. Additional Information

Item 10.A Share Capital

As of June 30, 2018, we had a total of 2,435,282,724 Ordinary Shares on issue. None of these shares were subject to any form of escrow as of that date and, as such, all of the shares were listed on the Australian Securities Exchange and were freely tradable.

Based on our review of shareholder records (based solely on the addresses), as of June 30, 2018 there were 35 U.S. resident shareholders of our Ordinary Shares holding 2,018,616 shares representing 0.080% of the total issued and outstanding Ordinary Shares. Our Ordinary Shares do not have a par value. These figures do not include any Ordinary Shares which may be held by U.S. residents in the form of American Depositary Receipts (ADRs).

[Table of Contents](#)

During the last five years, the number of Ordinary Shares on issue has increased as follows:

Date	Nature of issue	Number of Ordinary Shares issued / outstanding	Movement in share capital / balance \$
As of June 30, 2013		475,471,819	83,735,845
August 9, 2013	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.072	14,555,576	1,048,001
August 14, 2013	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.072	15,999,980	1,151,999
August 30, 2013	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.072	11,111,111	800,000
October 8, 2013	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.072	19,277,837	1,388,000
October 9, 2013	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.072	24,333,333	1,752,000
October 14, 2013	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.072	5,000,000	360,000
November 18, 2013	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.072	6,944,445	500,000
December 31, 2013	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	8,714,541	281,722
January 20, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	16,517,440	569,022
February 12, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	17,645,870	554,939
February 19, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	16,379,660	552,975
March 3, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	15,388,290	548,968
April 10, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	17,429,100	533,732
May 16, 2014	Shares cancelled as part of the swap deal	(75,937,500)	(3,569,702)
June 3, 2014	Issue of shares in respect of interest rate true up adjustment relating to March and April, under convertible notes	2,117,250	—
June 27, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	22,969,740	531,519
To November, 2013	Other transaction costs arising on share issue	—	(658,528)
As of June 30, 2014		613,918,492	90,080,492

[Table of Contents](#)

Date	Nature of issue	Number of Ordinary Shares issued / outstanding	Movement in share capital / balance \$
July 9, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes plus capitalized interest	23,227,950	721,403
August 12, 2014	Issue of shares for capitalized interest on convertible notes	5,142,450	—
August 20, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes plus capitalized interest	25,817,550	580,783
October 2, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes plus capitalized interest	31,637,640	621,139
October 20, 2014	Issue of shares for capitalized interest on convertible notes	4,787,190	—
October 31, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes plus capitalized interest	46,503,360	306,619
November 28, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes plus capitalized interest	27,655,230	234,192
December 5, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes plus capitalized interest	34,100,456	78,546
December 19, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes plus capitalized interest	8,059,599	102,685
December 29, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes plus capitalized interest	8,677,729	102,849
December 30, 2014	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.0135	19,074,112	257,500
January 9, 2015	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes plus capitalized interest	8,258,496	113,474
January 22, 2015	Facility fee pursuant to a standby equity placement facility	35,876,392	—
January 30, 2015	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.01407	41,933,191	621,450
January 30, 2015	Exercise of 26,666,667 options @ \$0.015 each	26,666,667	400,000
February 2, 2015	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.02447	34,066,809	877,561
February 2, 2015	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	78,181,336	889,000
February 2, 2015	Issue of shares for capitalized interest on convertible notes	2,939,998	33,431
February 9, 2015	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.020	16,000,000	337,600
February 9, 2015	Exercise of 27,499,999 options @ \$0.015 each	27,499,999	412,500
February 13, 2015	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	1,712,663	51,000
February 13, 2015	Issue of shares for capitalized interest on convertible notes	72,260	2,152
February 13, 2015	Exercise of 37,666,666 options @ \$0.015 each	37,666,666	565,000
February 18, 2015	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.0695	10,500,000	729,750
February 18, 2015	Exercise of 8,666,667 options @ \$0.015 each	8,666,667	130,000
February 19, 2015	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	5,868,122	275,000
February 19, 2015	Issue of shares for capitalized interest on convertible notes	257,233	12,054
February 19, 2015	Exercise of 13,133,333 options @ \$0.015 each	13,133,333	197,000
February 20, 2015	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	2,713,459	150,000
February 20, 2015	Issue of shares for capitalized interest on convertible notes	119,690	6,616
February 20, 2015	Exercise of 2,000,000 options @ \$0.015 each	2,000,000	30,000
February 20, 2015	Exercise of 7,333,334 options @ \$0.015 each	7,333,334	110,000
March 11, 2015	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.0382	392,670,150	15,000,000
March 11, 2015	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.0334	107,329,800	3,584,815
To March 2015	Other transaction costs arising on share issue	—	(2,572,664)
To March 2015	Other transaction costs on placement of shares	4,123,608	(57,736)
As of June 30, 2015		1,714,191,631	115,247,128
July 23, 2015	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	1,006,441	25,000
July 23, 2015	Issue of shares for capitalized interest on convertible notes	84,652	2,102
July 27, 2015	Other transaction costs arising on share issue	—	(1,654)
As of June 30, 2016		1,715,282,724	115,272,576

[Table of Contents](#)

Date	Nature of issue	Number of Ordinary Shares issued / outstanding	Movement in share capital / balance \$
December 6, 2016	Issue of shares as part of private placements	720,000,000	8,049,369
To January 2017	Other transaction costs arising on share issue	—	(1,228,129)
March 16, 2017	Kentgrove Facility Fee Rebate	—	295,110
March 16, 2017	Other transaction costs on Kentgrove Facility Fee Rebate	—	(6,301)
As of June 30, 2017		2,435,282,724	122,382,625
December 7, 2017	Other transaction costs on prior private placements	—	(9,963)
As of June 30, 2018		2,435,282,724	122,372,662

As at June 30, 2014, Notes with a face value of USD 3,250,000 had been converted by Ironridge in return for which Ironridge received 117,161,871 ordinary shares (including ordinary shares issued in lieu of interest payment and an interest true-up adjustment). The balance of the notes were fully converted during 2015 in return for which Ironridge received 164,771,370 ordinary shares (including ordinary shares issued in lieu of interest payment).

During September 2014 the Company finalized the raising of \$2,150,000 via the issue of unlisted secured (debt) notes to existing and new Australian institutional and wholesale investors. The debt notes carried a 10.0% coupon rate, and as approved at the Annual General Meeting, held on November 25, 2014, became convertible notes which could convert into ordinary shares (at a 10.0% discount to the 5 day VWAP). These convertible notes also carry free attached options to purchase further shares in the Company.

\$2,125,000 of the convertible notes, together with the capitalized interest, had been converted into 150,961,041 ordinary shares in the Company at June 30, 2015.

On July 23, 2015 the balance of \$25,000 convertible notes plus capitalized interest was converted into 1,091,093 ordinary shares in the Company.

On December 2, 2014, the Company granted a total of 143,333,333 fully vested options over ordinary shares in the Company to the holders of convertible notes. The options, which were granted at no cost, entitle the holders to acquire one ordinary share at a price of \$0.015 at any time up to, and including December 2, 2018. At June 30, 2015, 122,966,666 options had been exercised for an increase in capital of \$ 1,844,500. As at the date of this report, 20,366,667 of these options remain unexercised.

During December 2014, the Company raised \$ 257,500 from existing shareholders through the issue of 19,074,112 new shares as part of a Share Purchase Plan.

In March 2015 an additional \$ 18,354,815 capital was raised at a weighted average issue price of \$ 0.0372 per share from professional and sophisticated investors in the United States through an offer of 499,999,950 fully paid ordinary shares, represented by 3,333,333 with each ADS representing 150 ordinary shares).

During January 2015 year the Company entered into a standby equity placement facility with Kentgrove, an investment fund managed by Kentgrove Capital Pty Ltd.

Key terms of the Standby Equity Placement Facility:

- Standby equity placement facility of up to A\$24,000,000 with a maturity date January 21, 2017.
- Multiple placements permitted.
- For each placement, shares are issued at a 5% discount to a volume weighted average price (VWAP) over the period of the placement.
- A facility fee of 2.33% of the facility amount is payable, to be satisfied by the issue of shares. The facility fee, less 20%, will be rebated at termination or at maturity, pro rata for any amount of the facility that is unutilized.
- The commencement fee rebate may be paid by cash or shares.

As at June 30, 2016, the Company has issued 142,500,000 shares to Kentgrove under the standby facility for \$ 2,566,361.

As of June 30, 2016 and 2015, the following outstanding unlisted options, together with their respective ASX codes and expiry dates, were convertible into Ordinary Shares. The exercise prices are quoted in Australian dollars.

[Table of Contents](#)

In December 2016 an additional \$ 8,049,369 capital was raised at a weighted average issue price of \$ 0.0113 per share from professional and sophisticated investors in the United States through an offer of 720,000,000 fully paid ordinary shares, represented by 4,800,000 ADS’s (with each ADS representing 150 ordinary shares).

In March 2017, the company received \$295,110 as a rebate of a facility fee originally provided to Kentgrove Capital on commencement of a standby equity placement facility agreement entered into in January 2015 that was paid on expiry of the facility agreement on January 21, 2017 in accordance with the agreement, representing a reduction in total equity transaction costs associated with the commencement of the facility.

As of June 30, 2018 and 2017, the following outstanding unlisted options, together with their respective ASX codes and expiry dates, were convertible into Ordinary Shares. The exercise prices are quoted in Australian dollars.

Option description	2018	Weighted ave. exercise price	2017	Weighted ave. exercise price
Unlisted employee options				
GTGAD (expiring September 14, 2020)	—	—	250,000	\$ 0.058
GTGAD (expiring November 24, 2020)	19,236,111	\$ 0.020	24,236,111	\$ 0.020
GTGAD (expiring March 31, 2021)	5,000,000	\$ 0.020	7,500,000	\$ 0.020
GTGAD (expiring February 16, 2022)	10,500,000	\$ 0.010	22,750,000	\$ 0.010
	34,736,111	\$ 0.017	54,736,111	\$ 0.016
Unlisted options attached to convertible notes				
GTGAC (expiring December 2, 2018)	20,366,667	\$ 0.015	20,366,667	\$ 0.015
Balance at the end of the financial year	55,102,778	\$ 0.016	75,102,778	\$ 0.016
Exercisable at the end of the financial year	48,102,722	\$ 0.017	36,234,722	\$ 0.017

Item 10.B Our Constitution

At the Annual General Meeting of the Company held on November 23, 2005, the shareholders resolved to replace the existing Constitution with a revised version. A copy of the Constitution has been posted on the Company’s website: www.gtglabs.com. The principal changes which have been implemented in the new Constitution may be summarized as follows:

- General changes — general changes are proposed to make the Constitution consistent with best practice, update legal matters under the existing Constitution consistent with legislative and regulatory developments and to address certain content and language aspects.
- ASX Listing Rules — it provides that the Listing Rules prevail in the event of any inconsistency.
- Shares — it allows the Directors to issue shares subject to the *Corporations Act 2001* and the Listing Rules.
- Proportionate takeover power — the existing Constitution has a clause in it requiring shareholder approval to be obtained before any proportionate takeover is made. However, that clause is ineffective because it needs to have been renewed at least every three years in accordance with the requirements of the Corporations Act. The new Constitution does not include this clause on the basis that it offers no real benefit.
- Unmarketable parcels — the new Constitution permits the Company to sell holdings of less than a marketable parcel in accordance with the procedural and timing requirements of the Listing Rules. This only applies if a shareholder has an opportunity to opt out of any proposed sale arrangement and does not do so.
- Notice of shareholders’ meetings — the new Constitution enables notice of shareholders’ meetings to be given by electronic means.

[Table of Contents](#)

- Changes to general meetings — the new Constitution enables the Directors to change the venue for, and postpone or cancel a general meeting if such meeting is unnecessary, in the interests of shareholders, if the venue would be unreasonable or impractical, or for reasons of efficiency. This does not apply in the event of a meeting requisitioned by shareholders.
- Quorum for shareholders’ meetings — a quorum of three shareholders represents a quorum for shareholders’ meetings, whether by way of being personally present, attorney, proxy or corporate representative.
- Casting vote — the Chairman of a shareholders’ meeting does not have a casting vote.
- Number of Directors — it contemplates that the number of Directors need to be not less than three nor more than the number determined by the Directors which, until otherwise determined, is ten.
- Share qualification — a Director need not hold any shares in the Company in order to be a Director.
- Alternate directors — there are no provisions entitling the Directors to appoint alternate directors, on the basis that this is an outdated and undesirable approach.⁴
- Directors’ tenure of office — a Director must retire from office or seek re-election by no later than the third Annual General Meeting following his or her appointment or re-election or three years, whichever is longer (other than the Managing Director).
- Vacation of office — the office of a Director is automatically vacated if the Director is an Executive Director under an employment agreement and that agreement terminates, unless the Board otherwise determines.
- Powers of Directors — the Directors have a general power to manage the Company’s business.
- Meetings of Directors — the Directors may meet in person or by electronic means.
- Quorum for Directors’ meetings — the quorum for Directors’ meetings is three, unless otherwise determined.
- Casting vote — the Chairman has a casting vote at Directors’ meetings.
- Indemnity — the new Constitution contains an updated indemnity clause in favor of the current and former Directors, Secretaries indemnifying them from liability consistent with the Corporations Act provisions and to the maximum extent permitted by law.
- Insurance — the Company must maintain and pay insurance premiums with respect to its current and former Directors, Secretaries and other officers to the extent permitted by law.
- Access — current and former Directors may access the financial and other records of the Company for the purposes of legal proceedings involving the person.

Item 10.C Material Contracts

On August 8, 2018, the Company executed an Equity Placement Facility with Kentgrove Capital Pty Ltd. Under the Facility, Kentgrove Capital may provide the Company with up to A\$20 million of equity capital in a series of individual placements of up to \$1 million (or a higher amount by mutual agreement) over the next 20 months (refer to Note 29 of the Financial Report for details)

There were no other material contracts entered into during the year preceding the date of this Annual Report which were outside the ordinary course of business

Item 10.D Exchange Controls and Other Limitations Affecting Security Holders

Under existing Australian legislation, the Reserve Bank of Australia does not inhibit the import and export of funds, and, generally, no permission is required to be given to Genetic Technologies for the movement of funds in and out of Australia. However, payments to or from (or relating to) Iraq, its agencies or nationals, the government or a public authority of Libya, or certain Libyan undertakings, the authorities in the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia (Serbia and Montenegro) or their agencies, the Taliban (also referred to as the Islamic Emirate of Afghanistan), or the National Union for the Total Independence of Angola (also known as UNITA), its senior officials or the adult members of their immediate families, may not be made without the specific approval of the Reserve Bank of Australia.

[Table of Contents](#)

Accordingly, at the present time, remittances of any dividends, interest or other payment by Genetic Technologies to non-resident holders of Genetic Technologies' securities in the U.S. are not, subject to the above, restricted by exchange controls or other limitations.

Takeovers Act

There are no limitations, either under the laws of Australia or under the Company's Constitution, to the right of non-residents to hold or vote Genetic Technologies Ordinary Shares other than the Commonwealth Foreign Acquisitions and Takeovers Act 1975 (the "Takeovers Act"). The Takeovers Act may affect the right of non-Australian residents, including U.S. residents, to hold Ordinary Shares but does not affect the right to vote, or any other rights associated with, any Ordinary Shares held in compliance with its provisions. Acquisitions of shares in Australian companies by foreign interests are subject to review and approval by the Treasurer of the Commonwealth of Australia under the Takeovers Act. The Takeovers Act applies to any acquisition of outstanding shares of an Australian company that exceeds, or results in a foreign person or persons controlling the voting power of more than a certain percentage of those shares. The thresholds are 15% where the shares are acquired by a foreign person, or group of associated foreign persons, or 40% in aggregate in the case of foreign persons who are not associated. Any proposed acquisition that would result in an individual foreign person (with associates) holding more than 15% must be notified to the Treasurer in advance of the acquisition. There are statutory limitations in Australia on foreign ownership of certain businesses, such as banks and airlines, not relevant to the Company. However, there are no other statutory or regulatory provisions of Australian law or Australian Securities Exchange requirements that restrict foreign ownership or control of Genetic Technologies.

Corporations Act 2001

As applied to Genetic Technologies Limited, the *Corporations Act 2001* (the "*Corporations Act 2001*") prohibits any legal person (including a corporation) from acquiring a relevant interest in Ordinary Shares if after the acquisition that person or any other person's voting power in Genetic Technologies Limited increases from 20% or below to more than 20%, or from a starting point that is above 20% and below 90%.

This prohibition is subject to a number of specific exceptions set out in section 611 of the *Corporations Act 2001* which must be strictly complied with to be applicable.

In general terms, a person is considered to have a "relevant interest" in a share in Genetic Technologies if that person is the holder of that share, has the power to exercise, or control the exercise of, a right to vote attached to that share, or has the power to dispose of, or to control the exercise of a power to dispose of that share.

It does not matter how remote the relevant interest is or how it arises. The concepts of "power" and "control" are given wide and extended meanings in this context in order to deem certain persons to hold a relevant interest. For example, each person who has voting power above 20% in a company or a managed investment scheme which in turn holds shares in Genetic Technologies is deemed to have a relevant interest in those Genetic Technologies shares. Certain situations (set out in section 609 of the *Corporations Act 2001*) which would otherwise constitute the holding of a relevant interest are excluded from the definition.

A person's voting power in Genetic Technologies Limited is that percentage of the total votes attached to Ordinary Shares in which that person and its associates (as defined in the *Corporations Act 2001*) holds a relevant interest.

Item 10.E Taxation

This summary of material tax consequences is based on the tax laws of the United States (including the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, its legislative history, existing and proposed regulations thereunder, published rulings and court decisions) and on the Australian tax law and practice as in effect on the date hereof. In addition, this summary is based on the income tax convention between the United States and Australia (the "Treaty"). The foregoing laws and legal authorities as well as the Treaty are subject to change (or changes in interpretation), possibly with retroactive effect. Finally, this summary is based in part upon the representations of our ADR Depositary and the assumption that each obligation in the Deposit Agreement and any related agreement will be performed in accordance with its terms.

The discussion does not address any aspects of U.S. taxation other than federal income taxation or any aspects of Australian taxation other than federal income taxation, stamp duty and goods and services tax. This discussion does not necessarily address all aspects of U.S. or Australian federal tax considerations that may be important to particular investors in light of their individual investment circumstances or investors subject to special tax regimes, like broker-dealers, insurance companies, banks or other financial institutions, tax-exempt organizations, regulated investment companies, real estate investment trusts or financial asset securitization investment trusts, persons who actually or constructively own 10% or more of our ADRs or Ordinary Shares, persons who hold ADRs or Ordinary Shares as part of a straddle, hedge, conversion or constructive sale transaction or other integrated transaction, persons who

[Table of Contents](#)

have elected mark-to-market accounting, U.S. holders whose functional currency is not the U.S. dollar, U.S. expatriates, investors liable for the alternative minimum tax, partnerships and other pass-through entities, or persons who acquired their ADRs or Ordinary Shares through the exercise of options or similar derivative securities or otherwise as compensation. Prospective investors are urged to consult their tax advisers regarding the U.S. and Australian federal, state and local tax consequences and any other tax consequences of owning and disposing of ADRs and shares.

Australian Tax Consequences

In this section, we discuss Australian tax considerations that apply to non-Australian tax residents who are residents of the United States with respect to the ownership and disposal by the absolute beneficial owners of ADRs. This summary does not discuss any foreign or state tax considerations, other than stamp duty.

Nature of ADRs for Australian Taxation Purposes

ADRs held by a U.S. holder will be treated for Australian taxation purposes as being held under a “bare trust” for that holder. Consequently, the underlying Ordinary Shares will be regarded as owned by the ADR holder for Australian income tax and capital gains tax purposes. Dividends paid on the underlying Ordinary Shares will also be treated as dividends paid to the ADR holder, as the person beneficially entitled to those dividends. Therefore, in the following analysis, we discuss the tax consequences to non-Australian resident holders of Ordinary Shares which, for Australian taxation purposes, will be the same as to U.S. holders of ADRs.

Taxation of Dividends

Australia operates a dividend imputation system under which dividends may be declared to be “franked” to the extent of tax paid on company profits. Fully franked dividends are not subject to dividend withholding tax. Dividends payable by our company to non-Australian resident stockholders will be subject to dividend withholding tax, to the extent the dividends are unfranked. Dividend withholding tax will be imposed at 30%, unless a stockholder is a resident of a country with which Australia has a double taxation agreement. Under the provisions of the Treaty, the Australian tax withheld on unfranked dividends paid by us to which a resident of the United States is beneficially entitled is generally limited to 15% if the U.S. resident holds less than 10% of the voting rights of our company, unless the shares are effectively connected to a permanent establishment or fixed base in Australia through which the stockholder carries on business or provides independent personal services, respectively. Where a U.S. corporate resident holds 10% or more of the voting rights of our company, the withholding tax rate is reduced to 5%.

Tax on Sales or other Dispositions of Shares - Capital Gains Tax

Non-Australian resident stockholders who hold their shares in us on capital account will not be subject to Australian capital gains tax on any gain made on a sale or other disposal of our shares, unless they hold 10% or more of our issued capital and the Company holds real property situated in Australia, the market value of which is 50% or more of the market value of the Company. The Australian Taxation Office maintains the view that the Treaty does not limit Australian capital gains tax. Australian capital gains tax applies to net capital gains charged at a taxpayer’s marginal tax rate but, for certain stockholders, a discount of the capital gain may apply if the shares have been held for 12 months or more. For individuals, this discount is 50%. For superannuation funds, the discount is 33%. There is no discount for a company that derives a net capital gain. Net capital gains are calculated after deducting capital losses, which may only be offset against such gains.

Tax on Sales or other Dispositions of Shares - Stockholders Holding Shares on Revenue Account

Some non-Australian resident stockholders may hold shares on revenue rather than on capital account, for example, share traders. These stockholders may have the gains made on the sale or other disposal of the shares included in their assessable income under the ordinary income provisions of the income tax law, if the gains are sourced in Australia. Non-Australian resident stockholders assessable under these ordinary income provisions in respect of gains made on shares held on revenue account would be assessed for those gains at the Australian tax rates for non-Australian residents, which start at a marginal rate of 32.5%. Some relief from the Australian income tax may be available to non-Australian resident stockholders under the Treaty, for example, because the stockholder derives business profits not through a permanent establishment in Australia. To the extent an amount would be included in a non-Australian resident stockholder’s assessable income under both the capital gains tax provisions and the ordinary income provisions, the capital gain amount would generally be reduced, so that the stockholder would not be subject to double tax on any part of the income gain or capital gain.

Dual Residency

If a stockholder were a resident of both Australia and the United States under the respective domestic taxation laws of those countries, that stockholder may be subject to tax as an Australian resident. If, however, the stockholder is determined to be a U.S. resident for the purposes of the Treaty, the Australian tax would be subject to limitation by the Treaty. Stockholders should obtain specialist taxation advice in these circumstances.

Stamp Duty

Any transfer of shares through trading on the Australian Securities Exchange, whether by Australian residents or foreign residents, is not subject to stamp duty within Australia.

Australian Death Duty

Australia does not have estate or death duties. Further, no capital gains tax liability is realized upon the inheritance of a deceased person’s shares. However, the subsequent disposal of the shares by beneficiaries may give rise to a capital gains tax liability.

Goods and Services Tax

The issue or transfer of shares will not incur Australian goods and services tax and does not require a stockholder to register for Australian goods and services tax purposes.

United States Federal Income Taxation

As used below, a “U.S. holder” is a beneficial owner of an ADR that is, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, (i) a citizen or resident alien individual of the United States, (ii) a corporation (or an entity treated as a corporation) created or organized under the law of the United States, any State thereof or the District of Columbia, (iii) an estate the income of which is subject to U.S. federal income tax without regard to its source or (iv) a trust if (1) a court within the United States is able to exercise primary supervision over the administration of the trust, and one or more United States persons have the authority to control all substantial decisions of the trust, or (2) the trust has a valid election in effect under applicable U.S. Treasury Regulations to be treated as a United States person. For purposes of this discussion, a “non-U.S. holder” is a beneficial owner of an ADR that is (i) a nonresident alien individual, (ii) a corporation (or an entity treated as a corporation) created or organized in or under the law of a country other than the United States or a political subdivision thereof or (iii) an estate or trust that is not a U.S. Holder. If a partnership (including for this purpose any entity treated as a partnership for U.S. federal tax purposes) is a beneficial owner of an ADR, the U.S. federal tax treatment of a partner in the partnership generally will depend on the status of the partner and the activities of the partnership. A holder of an ADR that is a partnership and partners in that partnership should consult their own tax advisers regarding the U.S. federal income tax consequences of holding and disposing of ADRs. We have not sought a ruling from the Internal Revenue Service (“IRS”) or an opinion of counsel as to any U.S. federal income tax consequence described herein. The IRS may disagree with the description herein, and its determination may be upheld by a court.

GIVEN THE COMPLEXITY OF THE TAX LAWS AND BECAUSE THE TAX CONSEQUENCES TO ANY PARTICULAR INVESTOR MAY BE AFFECTED BY MATTERS NOT DISCUSSED HEREIN, PROSPECTIVE INVESTORS ARE URGED TO CONSULT THEIR OWN TAX ADVISORS WITH RESPECT TO THE SPECIFIC TAX CONSEQUENCES OF THE ACQUISITION, OWNERSHIP AND DISPOSITION OF ADRs, INCLUDING THE APPLICABILITY AND EFFECT OF STATE, LOCAL AND NON-U.S. TAX LAWS, AS WELL AS U.S. FEDERAL TAX LAWS.

Nature of ADRs for U.S. Federal Income Tax Purposes

In general, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, a holder of an ADR will be treated as the owner of the underlying shares. Accordingly, except as specifically noted below, the tax consequences discussed below with respect to ADRs will be the same as for shares in the Company, and exchanges of shares for ADRs, and ADRs for shares, generally will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax.

Taxation of Dividends

U.S. Holders. In general, subject to the passive foreign investment company rules discussed below, a distribution on an ADR will constitute a dividend for U.S. federal income tax purposes to the extent that it is made from our current or accumulated earnings and profits as determined under U.S. federal income tax principles. If a distribution exceeds our current and accumulated earnings and profits, it is generally treated as a non-taxable reduction of basis to the extent of the U.S. holder’s tax basis in the ADR on which it is paid, and to the extent it exceeds that basis it will be treated as capital gain. For purposes of this discussion, the term “dividend” means a distribution that constitutes a dividend for U.S. federal income tax purposes. The Company has not maintained and does not plan to maintain calculations of earnings and profits under U.S. federal income tax principles. Accordingly, it is unlikely that U.S. Holders will be able to establish that a distribution by the Company is in excess of its current and accumulated earnings and profits (as computed under U.S. federal income tax principles). Therefore, a U.S. Holder should expect that a distribution by the Company will generally be treated as taxable in its entirety as a dividend to U.S. Holders for U.S. federal income tax purposes even though the distribution may be treated in whole or in part as a non-taxable distribution for Australian tax purposes.

The gross amount of any dividend on an ADR (which will include the amount of any Australian taxes withheld) generally will be subject to U.S. federal income tax as foreign source dividend income, and will not be eligible for the corporate dividends received

[Table of Contents](#)

deduction. The amount of a dividend paid in Australian dollars will be its value in U.S. dollars based on the prevailing spot market exchange rate in effect on the day the U.S. holder receives the dividend or, in the case of a dividend received in respect of an ADR, on the date the Depositary receives it, whether or not the dividend is converted into U.S. dollars. A U.S. holder will have a tax basis in any distributed Australian dollars equal to its U.S. dollar amount on the date of receipt, and any gain or loss realized on a subsequent conversion or other disposition of Australian dollars generally will be treated as U.S. source ordinary income or loss. If dividends paid in Australian dollars are converted into U.S. dollars on the date they are received by a U.S. holder, the U.S. holder generally should not be required to recognize foreign currency gain or loss in respect of the dividend income.

Subject to certain exceptions for short-term and hedged positions, a dividend that a non-corporate holder receives on an ADR will be subject to a maximum federal income tax rate of 20% if the dividend is a “qualified dividend”. A dividend on an ADR will be a qualified dividend if (i) either (a) the ADRs are readily tradable on an established market in the United States or (b) we are eligible for the benefits of a comprehensive income tax treaty with the United States that the Secretary of the Treasury determines is satisfactory for purposes of these rules and that includes an exchange of information program, and (ii) we were not, in the year prior to the year the dividend was paid, and are not, in the year the dividend is paid, a passive foreign investment company (“PFIC”). The ADRs are listed on the NASDAQ Capital Market, which should qualify them as readily tradable on an established securities market in the United States. In any event, the Treaty satisfies the requirements of clause (i) (b), and we are a resident of Australia entitled to the benefits of the Treaty. However, based on our audited financial statements and relevant market and shareholder data, we believe we were a PFIC for U.S. federal income tax purposes for our taxable years ended June 30, 2017 and June 30, 2018, and expect to be classified as a PFIC in the current taxable year. Given that the determination of PFIC status involves the application of complex tax rules, and that it is based on the nature of our income and assets from time to time, no assurances can be provided that we will or will not be considered a PFIC for any past or future taxable years. In addition, as described in the section below entitled “Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules,” if we were a PFIC in a year while a U.S. holder held an ADR, and if the U.S. holder has not made a qualified electing fund election effective for the first year the U.S. holder held the ADR, the ordinary share underlying the ADR remains an interest in a PFIC for all future years or until such an election is made. The IRS takes the position that such rule will apply for purposes of determining whether an ADR is an interest in a PFIC in the year a dividend is paid or in the prior year, even if we do not satisfy the tests to be a PFIC in either of those years. Even if dividends on the ADRs would otherwise be eligible for qualified dividend treatment, in order to qualify for the reduced qualified dividend tax rates, a non-corporate holder must hold the ordinary share on which a dividend is paid for more than 60 days during the 120-day period beginning 60 days before the ex-dividend date, disregarding for this purpose any period during which the non-corporate holder has an option to sell, is under a contractual obligation to sell or has made (and not closed) a short sale of substantially identical stock or securities, is the grantor of an option to buy substantially identical stock or securities or, pursuant to Treasury regulations, has diminished such holder’s risk of loss by holding one or more other positions with respect to substantially similar or related property. In addition, to qualify for the reduced qualified dividend tax rates, the non-corporate holder must not be obligated to make related payments with respect to positions in substantially similar or related property. Payments in lieu of dividends from short sales or other similar transactions will not qualify for the reduced qualified dividend tax rates.

A non-corporate holder that receives an extraordinary dividend eligible for the reduced qualified dividend rates must treat any loss on the sale of the stock as a long-term capital loss to the extent of the dividend. For purposes of determining the amount of a non-corporate holder’s deductible investment interest expense, a dividend is treated as investment income only if the non-corporate holder elects to treat the dividend as not eligible for the reduced qualified dividend tax rates. Special limitations on foreign tax credits with respect to dividends subject to the reduced qualified dividend tax rates apply to reflect the reduced rates of tax.

The U.S. Treasury has announced its intention to promulgate rules pursuant to which non-corporate holders of stock of non-U.S. corporations, and intermediaries through whom the stock is held, will be permitted to rely on certifications from issuers to establish that dividends are treated as qualified dividends. Because those procedures have not yet been issued, it is not clear whether we will be able to comply with them.

Non-corporate holders of ordinary shares are urged to consult their own tax advisers regarding the availability of the reduced qualified dividend tax rates with respect to dividends received on the ADRs in the light of their own particular circumstances.

Any Australian withholding tax imposed on dividends received with respect to the ADRs will be treated as a foreign income tax eligible for credit against a U.S. holder’s U.S. federal income tax liability, subject to generally applicable limitations under U.S. federal income tax law. For purposes of computing those limitations separately under current law for specific categories of income, a dividend generally will constitute foreign source “passive category income” or, in the case of certain holders, “general category income.” A U.S. holder will be denied a foreign tax credit with respect to Australian income tax withheld from dividends received with respect to the ADRs to the extent the U.S. holder has not held the ADRs for at least 16 days of the 30-day period beginning on the date which is 15 days before the ex-dividend date or to the extent the U.S. holder is under an obligation to make related payments with respect to substantially similar or related property. Any days during which a U.S. holder has substantially diminished its risk of loss on the ADRs are not counted toward meeting the 16-day holding period required by the statute. The rules relating to the determination of the foreign tax credit are complex, and U.S. holders are urged to consult with their own tax advisers to determine whether and to what extent they

[Table of Contents](#)

will be entitled to foreign tax credits as well as with respect to the determination of the foreign tax credit limitation. Alternatively, any Australian withholding tax may be taken as a deduction against taxable income, provided the U.S. holder takes a deduction and not a credit for all foreign income taxes paid or accrued in the same taxable year. In general, special rules will apply to the calculation of foreign tax credits in respect of dividend income that is subject to preferential rates of U.S. federal income tax.

Non-U.S. holders. A dividend paid to a non-U.S. holder of an ADR will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax unless the dividend is effectively connected with the conduct of trade or business by the non-U.S. holder within the United States (and is attributable to a permanent establishment or fixed base the non-U.S. holder maintains in the United States if an applicable income tax treaty so requires as a condition for the non-U.S. holder to be subject to U.S. taxation on a net income basis on income from the ADR). A non-U.S. holder generally will be subject to tax on an effectively connected dividend in the same manner as a U.S. holder. A corporate non-U.S. holder under certain circumstances may also be subject to an additional “branch profits tax,” the rate of which may be reduced pursuant to an applicable income tax treaty.

Taxation of Capital Gains

U.S. Holders. Subject to the passive foreign investment company rules discussed below, on a sale or other taxable disposition of an ADR, a U.S. holder will recognize capital gain or loss in an amount equal to the difference between the U.S. holder’s adjusted basis in the ADR and the amount realized on the sale or other disposition, each determined in U.S. dollars. Such capital gain or loss will be long-term capital gain or loss if at the time of the sale or other taxable disposition the ADR has been held for more than one year. In general, any adjusted net capital gain of an individual is subject to a maximum federal income tax rate of 20%. Capital gains recognized by corporate U.S. holders generally are subject to U.S. federal income tax at the same rate as ordinary income. The deductibility of capital losses is subject to limitations.

Any gain a U.S. holder recognizes generally will be U.S. source income for U.S. foreign tax credit purposes, and, subject to certain exceptions, any loss will generally be a U.S. source loss. If an Australian tax is paid on a sale or other disposition of an ADR, the amount realized will include the gross amount of the proceeds of that sale or disposition before deduction of the Australian tax. The generally applicable limitations under U.S. federal income tax law on crediting foreign income taxes may preclude a U.S. holder from obtaining a foreign tax credit for any Australian tax paid on a sale or other disposition of an ADR. The rules relating to the determination of the foreign tax credit are complex, and U.S. holders are urged to consult with their own tax advisers regarding the application of such rules. Alternatively, any Australian tax paid on the sale or other disposition of an ADR may be taken as a deduction against taxable income, provided the U.S. holder takes a deduction and not a credit for all foreign income taxes paid or accrued in the same taxable year.

Non-U.S. Holders. A non-U.S. holder will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax on gain recognized on a sale or other disposition of an ADR unless (i) the gain is effectively connected with the conduct of trade or business by the non-U.S. holder within the United States (and is attributable to a permanent establishment or fixed base the non-U.S. holder maintains in the United States if an applicable income tax treaty so requires as a condition for the non-U.S. holder to be subject to U.S. taxation on a net income basis on income from the ADR), or (ii) in the case of a non-U.S. holder who is an individual, the holder is present in the United States for 183 or more days in the taxable year of the sale or other disposition and certain other conditions apply. Any effectively connected gain of a corporate non-U.S. holder may also be subject under certain circumstances to an additional “branch profits tax,” the rate of which may be reduced pursuant to an applicable income tax treaty.

Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules

A special set of U.S. federal income tax rules applies to a foreign corporation that is a PFIC for U.S. federal income tax purposes. As noted above, based on our audited financial statements and relevant market and shareholder data, we believe that we were a PFIC for U.S. federal income tax purposes for our taxable years ended June 30, 2017 and June 30, 2018, and expect to be classified as a PFIC in our current taxable year. In addition, given that the determination of PFIC status involves the application of complex tax rules, and that it is based on the nature of our income and assets from time to time, no assurances can be provided that we will or will not be considered a PFIC for any past or future taxable years.

In general, a foreign corporation is a PFIC if at least 75% of its gross income for the taxable year is passive income or if at least 50% of its assets for the taxable year produce passive income or are held for the production of passive income. In general, passive income for this purpose means, with certain designated exceptions, dividends, interest, rents, royalties (other than certain rents and royalties derived in the active conduct of trade or business), annuities, net gains from dispositions of certain assets, net foreign currency gains, income equivalent to interest, income from notional principal contracts and payments in lieu of dividends. Passive assets are those assets that are held for production of passive income or do not produce income at all. Thus cash will be a passive asset. Interest, including interest on working capital, is treated as passive income for purposes of the income test. The determination of whether a foreign corporation is a PFIC is a factual determination made annually and is therefore subject to change. Subject to exceptions pursuant to

[Table of Contents](#)

certain elections that generally require the payment of tax, once stock in a foreign corporation is stock in a PFIC in the hands of a particular shareholder that is a United States person, it remains stock in a PFIC in the hands of that shareholder.

If we are treated as a PFIC, contrary to the tax consequences described in “U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations—Taxation of Dividends” and “U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations—Taxation of Capital Gains” above, a U.S. holder that does not make an election described in the succeeding two paragraphs would be subject to special rules with respect to (i) any gain realized on a sale or other disposition of an ADR (for purposes of these rules, a disposition of an ADR includes many transactions on which gain or loss is not realized under general U.S. federal income tax rules) and (ii) any “excess distribution” by the Company to the U.S. holder (generally, any distribution during a taxable year in which distributions to the U.S. holder on the ADR exceed 125% of the average annual taxable distributions (whether actual or constructive and whether or not out of earnings and profits) the U.S. holder received on the ADR during the preceding three taxable years or, if shorter, the U.S. holder’s holding period for the ADR). Under those rules, (i) the gain or excess distribution would be allocated ratably over the U.S. holder’s holding period for the ADR, (ii) the amount allocated to the taxable year in which the gain or excess distribution is realized would be taxable as ordinary income in its entirety and not as capital gain, would be ineligible for the reduced qualified dividend rates, and could not be offset by any deductions or losses, and (iii) the amount allocated to each prior year, with certain exceptions, would be subject to tax at the highest tax rate in effect for that year, and the interest charge generally applicable to underpayments of tax would be imposed in respect of the tax attributable to each of those years. A U.S. holder who owns an ADR during any year we are a PFIC will generally have to file IRS Form 8621. A failure to file this return will suspend the statute of limitations with respect to any tax return, event, or period to which such report relates (potentially including with respect to items that do not relate to a U.S. Holder’s investment in the ADRs).

The special PFIC rules described above will not apply to a U.S. holder if the U.S. holder makes a timely election, which remains in effect, to treat the Company as a “qualified electing fund” (“QEF”) in the first taxable year in which the U.S. holder owns an ADR and the Company is a PFIC and if the Company complies with certain reporting requirements. Instead, a shareholder of a QEF generally is currently taxable on a pro rata share of the Company’s ordinary earnings and net capital gain as ordinary income and long-term capital gain, respectively. Neither that ordinary income nor any actual dividend from the Company would qualify for the 20% maximum tax rate on dividends described above if the Company is a PFIC in the taxable year the ordinary income is realized or the dividend is paid or in the preceding taxable year. We have not yet determined whether we would make the computations necessary to supply U.S. holders with the information needed to report income and gain pursuant to a QEF election. It is, therefore, possible that U.S. holders would not be able to make or retain a QEF election in any year we are a PFIC. Although a QEF election generally cannot be revoked, if a U.S. holder made a timely QEF election for the first taxable year it owned an ADR and the Company is a PFIC (or is treated as having done so pursuant to any of certain elections), the QEF election will not apply during any later taxable year in which the Company does not satisfy the tests to be a PFIC. If a QEF election is not made in that first taxable year, an election in a later year generally will require the payment of tax and interest.

In lieu of a QEF election, a U.S. holder of stock in a PFIC that is considered marketable stock could elect to mark the stock to market annually, recognizing as ordinary income or loss each year an amount equal to the difference as of the close of the taxable year between the fair market value of the stock and the U.S. holder’s adjusted basis in the stock. Losses would be allowed only to the extent of net mark-to-market gain previously included in income by the U.S. holder under the election for prior taxable years. A U.S. holder’s adjusted basis in the ADRs will be adjusted to reflect the amounts included or deducted with respect to the mark-to-market election. If the mark-to-market election were made, the rules set forth in the second preceding paragraph would not apply for periods covered by the election. A mark-to-market election will not apply during any later taxable year in which the Company does not satisfy the tests to be a PFIC. In general, the ADRs will be marketable stock if the ADRs are traded, other than in de minimis quantities, on at least 15 days during each calendar quarter on a national securities exchange that is registered with the SEC or on a designated national market system or on any exchange or market that the Treasury Department determines to have rules sufficient to ensure that the market price accurately represents the fair market value of the stock. Under current law, the mark-to-market election may be available to U.S. holders of ADRs because the ADRs are listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market, which constitutes a qualified exchange, although there can be no assurance that the ADRs will be “regularly traded” for purposes of the mark-to-market election or that the ADRs will continue to be listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market.

Given the complexities of the PFIC rules and their potentially adverse tax consequences, U.S. holders of ADRs are urged to consult their tax advisers about the PFIC rules, including the availability of, and consequences to them of making a QEF election or a mark-to-market election with respect to the ordinary shares in the event that the Company is classified as a PFIC for any taxable year.

Medicare Surtax on Net Investment Income

Non-corporate US Holders whose income exceeds certain thresholds generally will be subject to 3.8% surtax on their “Net Investment Income” (which generally includes, among other things, dividends on, and capital gain from the sale or other taxable disposition of, the ADRs). Absent an election to the contrary, if a QEF election is available and made, QEF inclusions will not be included in net investment income at the time a US Holder includes such amounts in income, but rather will be included at the time

distributions are received or gains are recognized. Non-corporate US Holders should consult their own tax advisors regarding the possible effect of such tax on their ownership and disposition of the Common Shares, in particular the applicability of this surtax with respect to a non-corporate US Holder that makes a QEF or mark-to-market election in respect of their Common Shares.

Information Reporting and Backup Withholding

Dividends paid on, and proceeds from the sale or other disposition of, an ADR to a U.S. holder generally may be subject to information reporting requirements and may be subject to backup withholding unless the U.S. holder provides an accurate taxpayer identification number or otherwise establishes an exemption. The amount of any backup withholding collected from a payment to a U.S. holder will be allowed as a credit against the U.S. holder’s U.S. federal income tax liability and may entitle the U.S. holder to a refund, provided certain required information is furnished to the Internal Revenue Service. A non-U.S. holder generally will be exempt from these information reporting requirements and backup withholding tax but may be required to comply with certain certification and identification procedures in order to establish its eligibility for exemption.

Under U.S. federal income tax law and U.S. Treasury Regulations, certain categories of U.S. holders must file information returns with respect to their investment in, or involvement in, a foreign corporation. For example, all U.S. holders of PFIC stock are generally required to make annual return filings reporting their PFIC ownership and certain other information that the IRS may require. U.S. holders are urged to consult with their own tax advisors concerning such reporting requirements.

Reporting Obligations of Individual Owners of Foreign Financial Assets

Section 6038D of the Code generally requires U.S. individuals (and possibly certain entities that have U.S. individual owners) to file IRS Form 8938 if they hold certain “specified foreign financial assets,” the aggregate value of which exceeds \$50,000. The definition of specified foreign financial assets includes not only financial accounts maintained in foreign financial institutions, but also, unless held in accounts maintained by a financial institution, any stock or security issued by a non-US. person, any financial instrument or contract held for investment that has an issuer or counterparty other than a U.S. person and any interest in a foreign entity.

THE DISCUSSION ABOVE IS NOT INTENDED TO CONSTITUTE A COMPLETE ANALYSIS OF ALL TAX CONSIDERATIONS APPLICABLE TO AN INVESTMENT IN ADRs. HOLDERS AND POTENTIAL HOLDERS ARE URGED TO CONSULT THEIR OWN TAX ADVISERS CONCERNING THE TAX CONSEQUENCES RELEVANT TO THEM IN THEIR PARTICULAR SITUATION.

Item 10.F Dividends and Paying Agents

No dividends have been paid by the Company or recommended by the directors since the end of the previous financial year.

Item 10.G Statement by Experts

Not applicable.

Item 10.H Documents on Display

The documents concerning the Company which are referred to in this Annual Report may be inspected at the offices of the Company at 60-66 Hanover Street, Fitzroy, Victoria 3065 Australia. Following our listing on NASDAQ Global Market in September 2005, we are now subject to the information requirements of the U.S. Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and, in accordance therewith, we are required to file reports, including annual reports on Form 20-F, and other information with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission in electronic form. As a foreign private issuer, we are required to make filings with the Commission by electronic means. Any filings we make electronically will be available to the public over the Internet at the Commission’s website at <http://www.sec.gov>. We also maintain a website at www.gtglabs.com. Information on our website and websites linked to it do not constitute a part of this Annual Report.

Item 10.I Subsidiary Information

The following is a list of the Company’s subsidiaries as of the date of this Annual Report:

Name of subsidiary	Place of incorporation	Interest held
GeneType Corporation	California, U.S.A.	100%
GeneType Pty. Ltd.	Victoria, Australia	100%
Genetic Technologies Corporation Pty. Ltd.	New South Wales, Australia	100%
Geneventures Pty. Ltd.*	New South Wales, Australia	100%
Phenogen Sciences Inc.	Delaware, U.S.A.	100%

** Previously RareCollect Pty Ltd — name changed on April 6, 2018*

Item 11. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures about Market Risk

Our market risk relates primarily to exposure to changes in foreign currency exchange rates and interest rates. Refer Note 28 of the attached financial statements for further analysis surrounding market risk.

Interest Rate Risk. As of June 30, 2018 we had \$5,487,035 in cash & cash equivalents of which \$2,394,754 was subject to interest rate risk. Interest income earned on the cash balances is affected by changes in the levels of market interest rates. We invest excess cash in interest-bearing, investment-grade securities and time deposits in high-quality institutions. We do not utilize derivative financial instruments, derivative commodity instruments, positions or transactions in any material matter.

Accordingly, we believe that, while the investment-grade securities and time-deposits we hold are subject to changes in financial standing of the issuer of such securities, the principal is not subject to any material risks arising from changes in interest rates, foreign currency exchange rates, commodity prices, equity prices or other market changes that affect market risk sensitive instruments. Since we hold cash and cash equivalents in Banks which are located outside Australia, we are subject to certain cross-border risks, though due to the size of the holdings these risks are not generally significant.

Foreign Currency Exchange Rate Risk. We operate in Australia with active operations in the U.S.A., and are accordingly subject to certain foreign currency exposure. This includes foreign-currency denominated receivables, payables, debt, and other balance sheet positions as well as future cash flows resulting from anticipated transactions including intra-group transactions. Historically, currency translation gains and losses have been reflected as adjustments to stockholders’ equity, while transaction gains and losses have been reflected as components of income and loss. Transaction gains and losses could be material depending upon changes in the exchange rates between the Australian dollar and the U.S. dollar. A significant amount of our current revenue is denominated in U.S. dollars which provides us with a limited natural hedge against exchange rate movements.

Item 12. Description of Securities Other Than Equity Securities

Item 12.A Debt Securities

Not applicable.

Item 12.B Warrants and Rights

Not applicable.

Item 12.C Other Securities

Not applicable

Item 12.D American Depositary Shares

Not applicable.

PART II

Item 13. Defaults, Dividend Arrearages and Delinquencies

Not applicable.

Item 14. Material Modifications to the Rights of Security Holders and Use of Proceeds

Not applicable.

Item 15. Controls and Procedures

Item 15.A Disclosure controls and procedures

We maintain disclosure controls and procedures as such term is defined in Rules 13(a) - 15(e) and 15(d) - 15(e) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (the “Exchange Act”), as amended, that are designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed in the reports that we file or submit under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 is recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified in the rules and forms of the Securities and Exchange Commission. Disclosure controls and procedures include, without limitation, controls and procedures designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed in our reports filed or submitted under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 is accumulated and communicated to management, including our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, as appropriate, to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure.

Our Management, including our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, does not expect that our disclosure controls and procedures or our internal control over financial reporting will provide absolute assurance that all appropriate information will, in fact, be communicated to Management to allow timely decisions to be made or prevent all error and fraud. A control system, no matter how well conceived and operated, can provide only reasonable, not absolute, assurance that the objectives of the control system are met. Additionally, the design of a control system must reflect the fact that there are resource constraints, and the benefit of controls must be considered relative to their costs. Because of the inherent limitations in all control systems, no evaluation of controls can provide absolute assurance that all control issues and instances of fraud, if any, within the company have been detected or that our control system will operate effectively under all circumstances. Moreover, the design of any system of controls is based in part upon certain assumptions about the likelihood of future events, and there can be no assurance that any design will succeed in achieving its stated goals under all potential future conditions.

Our Management has carried out an evaluation, under the supervision and with the participation of our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, of the effectiveness of our disclosure controls and procedures as of June 30, 2018. Based on that evaluation, including the material weakness noted below in Item 15.B, the Chief Executive Officer and the Chief Financial Officer concluded that the Company’s disclosure controls and procedures were ineffective as of June 30, 2018.

Item 15.B Management’s annual report on internal control over financial reporting

Our Management is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting. The Securities Exchange Act of 1934 defines internal control over financial reporting in Rules 13(a) - 15(f) and Rules 15(d) - 15(f) as a process designed by, or under the supervision of, the Company’s Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer effected by the Company’s Board of Directors, Management and other personnel, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles and includes those policies and procedures that:

- Pertain to the maintenance of records that in reasonable detail accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the Company;
- Provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit the preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the Company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of Management and directors of the Company; and
- Provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use or disposition of the Company’s assets that could have a material effect on the consolidated financial statements.

A material weakness is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control over financial reporting such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the annual financial statements will not be prevented or detected on a timely basis.

Our Management, under the supervision and with participation of our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, have assessed the effectiveness of the Company’s internal control over financial reporting as of June 30, 2018. In making this assessment, Management used the criteria set forth by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission, or COSO, in Internal Control-Integrated Framework (2013). As a result of that assessment, Management identified the following material weakness as of June 30, 2018.

The Company did not maintain an adequate segregation of duties with respect to internal control over financial reporting, specifically including the following;

- We have limited accounting personnel to enable and sufficiently evidence an independent review of complex financial reporting matters.

This control deficiency is pervasive in nature and impacts all significant accounts and critical accounting estimates. This control deficiency did not result in material adjustments to the financial statements, however there is a reasonable possibility that a materials misstatement of the annual financial statements would not have been prevented or detected on a timely basis due to the failure to design

[Table of Contents](#)

and implement appropriate segregation of duty controls.. Accordingly, our management has determined that these control deficiencies constitute a material weakness.

Based upon its assessment, because of the material weakness described above our Management has concluded that, as of June 30, 2018, our internal control over financial reporting is not effective based upon the abovementioned criteria.

This Annual Report does not include an attestation report of the Company’s registered public accounting firm regarding internal control over financial reporting. Management’s report was not subject to attestation by the Company’s registered public accounting firm pursuant to rules of the Securities and Exchange Commission that permit the Company to provide only Management’s report in this Annual Report.

Item 15.C Attestation report of the registered public accounting firm

Not applicable.

Item 15.D Changes in Internal Control over Financial Reporting

The key management personnel of the Company continued to actively implement changes in improving overall internal control over financial reporting during the year ended June 30, 2018.

Remediation efforts

Segregation of duties. We are committed to remediating the material weakness over the segregation of duties by implementing changes to our internal control over financial reporting. We have taken certain steps in an effort to correct certain control deficiencies that were identified for the year ended June 30, 2017, including:

- Activation of SAP system notifications and reporting for CFO to view any changes to sensitive fields in supplier masterfile,
- CFO access to the underlying SAP system to record entries whilst also being responsible for reviewing journal entries has been altered by changing system user profile to read only.

Additional controls were also implemented during the year ended June 30, 2018 to remediate certain control deficiencies identified, and subsequent to the year- end we have implemented further changes, including:

- Continuity in the Finance team and ongoing training, which through the introduction of a more controlled month end closing process has provided opportunity for the finance team to take on tasks including preparation of the month end Finance Board reports and the FY2018 Annual Report which can now be reviewed by the CFO

Although these changes are an important step towards improving the segregation of duties, additional time is still required to fully re-assess the design of the controls and implement additional internal controls procedures over financial reporting and test their operating effectiveness. Other than as described in Remediation efforts section above, there have been no changes in internal control over financial reporting during the year ended June 30, 2018 that have materially affected, or are reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

Item 16.A Audit Committee Financial Expert

The chairman of the Audit Committee since January 31, 2018 has been Mr. Peter Rubinstein. and we believe that Mr. Rubinstein would meet the criteria of a financial expert.

Item 16.B Code of Ethics

We have adopted a Code of Ethics (styled “Code of Conduct”) that applies to all of our Directors and employees, including our principal executive officer, principal financial officer and principal accounting officer or controller. The Code can be downloaded at our website (www.gtglabs.com). Additionally, any person, upon request, can ask for a hard copy or electronic file of the Code. If we make any substantive amendment to the Code or grant any waivers, including any implicit waiver, from a provision of the Code, we will disclose the nature of such amendment or waiver on our website. During the year ended June 30, 2016, no such amendment was made or waiver granted.

Our Board of Directors is responsible for the corporate governance of the consolidated entity and guides and monitors the business and affairs of Genetic Technologies on behalf of the shareholders by whom they are elected and to whom they are accountable.

We are committed to achieving the leading standards of corporate governance.

[Table of Contents](#)

Reference is made to the revised Corporate Governance Principles and Recommendations issued and revised from time to time by the ASX Corporate Governance Council. The Board believes that all concepts of the revised Principles and Recommendations have been satisfied, however the Board is realistic with respect to the relative size and nature of the Company and have implemented the Recommendations accordingly. The Company endeavors to ensure exceptions to the guidelines do not have negative impact on the best interests of shareholders.

While in most respects the Company complies with the Recommendations, it is recognized that the development and implementation of policies and practices is an ongoing process that evolves with the needs of the business and its stakeholders.

ASX Listing Rule 4.10.3 requires an entity that is included in the official list as an ASX Listing to include in its annual report either a corporate governance statement that meets the requirements of that rule or the URL of the page on its website where such a statement is located.

The Company therefore advises that the current corporate governance statement and a summary of its main corporate governance practices may be found via the following link on the Company’s website: <http://www.gtgcorporate.com/investor-centre/corporate-governance>

We are therefore also required to publish an Appendix 4G Key to Disclosures Corporate Governance Council Principles and Recommendations annually that describes our adherence to the revised Corporate Governance Principles and Recommendations. This Appendix 4G with respect to the year ended June 30, 2018 was filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission on August 31, 2018.

In accordance with the Council’s recommendations, the Corporate Governance Statement must now contain certain specific information and must disclose the extent to which we have followed the guidelines during the period. Where a recommendation has not been followed, that fact must be disclosed, together with the reasons for the departure. The Company’s Corporate Governance Statement is now structured with reference to the Corporate Governance Council’s principles and recommendations. Below is an extract from the Company’s most recent Corporate Governance Statement.

As at the date of this Annual Report, the following twelve Corporate Governance documents had been adopted by the Board, in addition to the Company’s Constitution which was completely revised and subsequently approved by the Company’s shareholders in November 2005. All significant policies are published on the Company’s website (www.gtglabs.com).

- Board Charter, which defines the role of the Board and that of Management;
- Audit Committee Charter;
- Remuneration Committee Charter;
- Board Protocol, which clarifies the responsibilities of Directors and the Company’s expectations of them;
- Code of Conduct, including a Document Retention Policy;
- Board Performance Evaluation Policy;
- Risk and Compliance Policy;
- Continuous Disclosure Policy;
- Securities Trading Policy;
- Diversity Policy;
- Shareholder Communications Policy; and
- Whistleblower Policy.

Item 16.C Principal Accountant Fees and Services

The following table sets forth the fees billed to us by our Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm, PricewaterhouseCoopers, during the financial years ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively:

	Consolidated	
	2018 \$	2017 \$
Services rendered		
PricewaterhouseCoopers in respect of:		
Audit fees (1)	288,200	325,972

(1) Audit fees consist of services that would normally be provided in connection with statutory and regulatory filings or engagements, including services that generally only the independent accountant can reasonably provide such as comfort letters.

Audit Committee Pre-Approval Policies and Procedures

Our Board of Directors has established pre-approval and procedures for the engagement of its Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm for audit and non-audit services. The Board of Directors reviews the scope of the services to be provided, before their commencement, in order to ensure that there are no independence issues and the services are not prohibited services, as defined by the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.

Item 16.D Exemptions from the Listing Standards for Audit Committees

Not applicable.

Item 16.E Purchases Of Equity Securities by the Issuer and Affiliated Purchasers

Not applicable.

Item 16.F Change in Registrant’s Certifying Accountant

Not applicable.

Item 16.G Corporate Governance

Refer to Item 6C regarding the Company’s Corporate Governance practices and the key differences between the Listing Rules of the Australian Securities Exchange and the Marketplace Rules of NASDAQ as they apply to us.

Item 16.H Mine Safety Disclosure

Not applicable.

PART III

Item 17. Financial Statements

The Company has responded to Item 18 in lieu of responding to this Item.

[Table of Contents](#)

Item 18. Financial Statements

**GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LIMITED
INDEX TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

	<u>Page</u>
Genetic Technologies Limited - Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm.	F1
Genetic Technologies Limited - Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income/ (Loss) for the years ended June 30, 2016, 2015 and 2014.	F2
Genetic Technologies Limited - Consolidated Balance Sheets as of June 30, 2016 and 2015.	F3
Genetic Technologies Limited - Consolidated Statements of Changes in Equity for the years ended June 30, 2016, 2015 and 2014.	F5
Genetic Technologies Limited - Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the years ended June 30, 2016, 2015 and 2014.	F4
Genetic Technologies Limited - Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.	F6

Item 19. Exhibits

The following documents are filed as exhibits to this Annual Report on Form 20-F:

- 1.1 [Constitution of the Registrant.++](#)
- 2.1 [Deposit Agreement, dated as of January 14, 2002, by and among Genetic Technologies Limited, The Bank of New York Mellon, as Depositary, and the Owners and Holders of American Depositary Receipts \(such agreement is incorporated herein by reference to the Registration Statement on Form F-6 relating to the ADSs \(File No. 333-14270\) filed with the Commission on January 14, 2002\).](#)
- 2.2. The total indebtedness authorized under any instrument relating to long term debt of the Company does not exceed 10% of our total consolidated assets. Any instrument relating to indebtedness will be supplied to the Commission upon its request.
- 4(A).1 [Staff Share Plan 2001 dated November 30, 2001. +](#)
- 4(B).1 [Lease over premises in Fitzroy, Victoria, Australia with an effective date of September 1, 2015+++](#)
- 4(B) 1.2 [Renewal of Lease over premises in Fitzroy, Victoria, Australia with an effective date of September 1, 2018](#)
- 4(B).2 [Amendment to lease over premises in Charlotte, North Carolina, USA with an effective date of November 1, 2016++++](#)
- 4(B) 2.2 [Lease over premises over premises in Charlotte, North Carolina, USA with an effective date of July 23, 2018](#)
- 12.01 [Section 302 Certification](#)
- 12.02 [Section 906 Certification](#)
- 13.01 [Section 1350 Certification](#)
- 13.02 [Section 1350 Certification](#)
- 23.01 [Consent of PricewaterhouseCoopers](#)
- 101.INS XBRL Instance Document
- 101.SCH XBRL Schema Document
- 101.CAL XBRL Calculation Linkbase Document
- 101.DEF XBRL Definition Linkbase Document
- 101.LAB XBRL Labels Linkbase Document

+ Previously filed with the Company’s Registration Statement on Form 20-F (File No. 0-51504), filed with the Commission on August 19, 2005 and incorporated herein by reference.

++ Previously filed with the Company’s Registration Statement on Form 20-F (File No. 0-51504), filed with the Commission on December 21, 2010 and incorporated herein by reference.

+++ Previously filed with the Company’s Registration Statement on Form 20-F (File No. 0-51504), filed with the Commission on November 13, 2015 and incorporated herein by reference.

++++ Previously filed with the Company’s Registration Statement on Form 20-F (File No. 0-51504), filed with the Commission on October 28, 2016 and incorporated herein by reference.

SIGNATURES

The registrant hereby certifies that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form 20-F and that it has duly caused and authorized the undersigned to sign this Annual Report on its behalf.

GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LIMITED

Dated: **October 31, 2018**

By: /s/ Dr Paul Kasian
Name: Dr Paul Kasian
Title: Chief Executive Officer

GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LIMITED

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

To the Board of Directors and Shareholders of Genetic Technologies Limited

Opinion on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of Genetic Technologies Limited and its subsidiaries (collectively “the Company”) and its subsidiaries as of June 30, 2018 and 2017, and the related consolidated statements of comprehensive income/ (loss), consolidated statements of cash flows and consolidated statements of changes in equity for each of the three years in the period ended June 30, 2018, including the related notes (collectively referred to as the “consolidated financial statements”). In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company as of June 30, 2018 and 2017, and the results of their operations and their cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended June 30, 2018 in conformity with International Financial Reporting Standards as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board.

Substantial Doubt about the Company’s Ability to Continue as a Going Concern

The accompanying consolidated financial statements have been prepared assuming that the Company will continue as a going concern. As discussed in Note 2 to the consolidated financial statements, the Company has suffered recurring losses and cash outflows from operations that raise substantial doubt about its ability to continue as a going concern. Management’s plans in regard to these matters are also described in Note 2. The consolidated financial statements do not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

Basis for Opinion

These consolidated financial statements are the responsibility of the Company’s management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company’s consolidated financial statements based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (“PCAOB”) and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits of these consolidated financial statements in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the consolidated financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. The Company is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting. As part of our audits we are required to obtain an understanding of internal control over financial reporting but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company’s internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion.

Our audits included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the consolidated financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the consolidated financial statements. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

/s/ PricewaterhouseCoopers
Melbourne, Australia
October 31, 2018

We have served as the Company’s auditor since 2009.

**CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME/ (LOSS)
FOR 2018, 2017 and 2016**

	Note	Year ended June 30, 2018 \$	Year ended June 30, 2017 \$	Year ended June 30, 2016 \$
Revenue from operations				
Genetic testing services		189,254	518,506	824,586
Less: cost of sales	4	(300,088)	(492,417)	(743,060)
Gross profit from operations		(110,834)	26,089	81,526
Other revenue	5	—	—	300,548
Selling and marketing expenses		(1,066,404)	(2,721,474)	(3,186,497)
General and administrative expenses		(3,015,818)	(3,109,530)	(3,429,357)
Licensing, patent and legal costs		—	—	(103,581)
Laboratory, research and development costs		(2,210,498)	(2,366,334)	(2,584,752)
Finance costs		(28,843)	(31,995)	(28,889)
Foreign exchange gains reclassified on liquidation of subsidiary	7	527,049	—	—
Impairment of intangible assets expenses		—	(544,694)	—
Non-operating income and expenses	6	441,476	344,112	492,037
Profit/(loss) from operations before income tax		(5,463,872)	(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)
Income tax expense	9	—	—	—
Profit/(loss) for the year		(5,463,872)	(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)
Other comprehensive income/(loss)				
Exchange gains/(losses) on translation of controlled foreign operations		(522,966)	(130,655)	1,307,219
Exchange gains/(losses) on translation of non-controlled foreign operations		—	—	—
Other comprehensive income/(loss) for the year, net of tax		(522,966)	(130,655)	1,307,219
Total comprehensive profit/(loss) for the year		(5,986,838)	(8,534,481)	(7,151,746)
Profit/(loss) for the year is attributable to:				
Owners of Genetic Technologies Limited		(5,463,872)	(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)
Non-controlling interests		—	—	—
Total profit/(loss) for the year		(5,463,872)	(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)
Total comprehensive profit/(loss) for the year is attributable to:				
Owners of Genetic Technologies Limited		(5,986,838)	(8,534,481)	(7,151,746)
Non-controlling interests		—	—	—
Total comprehensive profit/(loss) for the year		(5,986,838)	(8,534,481)	(7,151,746)
Earnings/(loss) per share (cents per share)				
Basic and diluted net profit/(loss) per ordinary share	10	(0.22)	(0.40)	(0.49)
Weighted-average shares outstanding	10	2,435,282,724	2,121,638,888	1,715,214,158

CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS
As at June 30, 2018

	Notes	Consolidated	
		2018	2017
		\$	\$
ASSETS			
Current assets			
Cash and cash equivalents	11	5,487,035	10,988,255
Trade and other receivables	12	301,383	426,272
Prepayments and other assets	13	202,279	217,122
Total current assets		5,990,697	11,631,649
Non-current assets			
Property, plant and equipment	14	175,284	476,648
Total non-current assets		175,284	476,648
Total assets		6,165,981	12,108,297
LIABILITIES			
Current liabilities			
Trade and other payables	16	945,130	898,103
Provisions	17	505,583	567,190
Total current liabilities		1,450,713	1,465,293
Non-current liabilities			
Provisions	17	3,390	63,960
Total non-current liabilities		3,390	63,960
Total liabilities		1,454,103	1,529,253
Net assets		4,711,878	10,579,044
EQUITY			
Contributed equity	18	122,372,662	122,382,625
Reserves	19	5,651,162	6,044,493
Accumulated losses	20	(123,311,946)	(117,848,074)
Total equity		4,711,878	10,579,044

The above consolidated balance sheet should be read in conjunction with the accompanying notes.

CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS
For the year ended June 30, 2018

	Notes	Consolidated		
		2018	2017	2016
		\$	\$	\$
Cash flows from / (used in) operating activities				
Receipts from customers		758,452	964,520	1,482,970
Payments to suppliers and employees		(6,394,985)	(7,816,924)	(9,276,907)
Interest received		15,218	38,765	67,099
Net cash flows from / (used in) operating activities	11	<u>(5,621,315)</u>	<u>(6,813,639)</u>	<u>(7,726,838)</u>
Cash flows (used in)/ from investing activities				
Proceeds from the sale of plant and equipment		—	52,650	7,131
Purchases of plant and equipment		(2,385)	(234,799)	(303,462)
Net cash flows (used in)/ from investing activities		<u>(2,385)</u>	<u>(182,149)</u>	<u>(296,331)</u>
Cash flows (used in)/ from financing activities				
Proceeds from the issue of shares		—	8,049,369	—
Equity transaction costs		(9,963)	(1,234,430)	(1,654)
Facility fee rebate		—	295,110	—
Net cash flows (used in)/ from financing activities		<u>(9,963)</u>	<u>7,110,049</u>	<u>(1,654)</u>
Net (decrease)/ increase in cash and cash equivalents		(5,633,663)	114,261	(8,024,823)
Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of year		10,988,255	11,179,687	18,341,357
Net foreign exchange difference		132,443	(305,693)	863,153
Cash and cash equivalents at end of year	11	<u><u>5,487,035</u></u>	<u><u>10,988,255</u></u>	<u><u>11,179,687</u></u>

The above consolidated statement of cash flows should be read in conjunction with the accompanying notes.

CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CHANGES IN EQUITY
For the year ended June 30, 2018

Consolidated	Attributable to Members of Genetic Technologies Limited				Non-controlling interests	Total equity
	Contributed equity	Reserves	Accumulated losses	Parent interests		
	\$	\$	\$	\$	\$	\$
Balance at June 30, 2015	115,247,128	4,697,403	(100,985,283)	18,959,248	—	18,959,248
Loss for the year	—	—	(8,458,965)	(8,458,965)	—	(8,458,965)
Other comprehensive profit	—	1,307,219	—	1,307,219	—	1,307,219
Total comprehensive loss	—	1,307,219	(8,458,965)	(7,151,746)	—	(7,151,746)
Transactions with owners in their capacity as owners						
Value of shares issued on conversion of convertible notes	25,448	—	—	25,448	—	25,448
Share-based payments	—	50,239	—	50,239	—	50,239
	25,448	50,239	—	75,687	—	75,687
Balance at June 30, 2016	115,272,576	6,054,861	(109,444,248)	11,883,189	—	11,883,189
Loss for the year	—	—	(8,403,826)	(8,403,826)	—	(8,403,826)
Other comprehensive loss	—	(130,655)	—	(130,655)	—	(130,655)
Total comprehensive loss	—	(130,655)	(8,403,826)	(8,534,481)	—	(8,534,481)
Transactions with owners in their capacity as owners						
Contributions of equity (net of transaction costs)	6,814,939	—	—	6,814,939	—	6,814,939
Share-based payments	—	120,287	—	120,287	—	120,287
Share facility fee rebate	295,110	—	—	295,110	—	295,110
	7,110,049	120,287	—	7,230,336	—	7,230,336
Balance at June 30, 2017	122,382,625	6,044,493	(117,848,074)	10,579,044	—	10,579,044
Loss for the year	—	—	(5,463,872)	(5,463,872)	—	(5,463,872)
Other comprehensive loss	—	(522,966)	—	(522,966)	—	(522,966)
Total comprehensive loss	—	(522,966)	(5,463,872)	(5,986,838)	—	(5,986,838)
Transactions with owners in their capacity as owners						
Contributions of equity (net of transaction costs)	(9,963)	—	—	(9,963)	—	(9,963)
Share-based payments	—	129,635	—	129,635	—	129,635
Share facility fee rebate	—	—	—	—	—	—
	(9,963)	129,635	—	119,672	—	119,672
Balance at June 30, 2018	122,372,662	5,651,162	(123,311,946)	4,711,878	—	4,711,878

The above consolidated statements of changes in equity should be read in conjunction with the accompanying notes.

NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

For the year ended June 30, 2018

1. CORPORATE INFORMATION

The Financial Report of Genetic Technologies Limited (the “Company”) for the year ended June 30, 2018 was authorized for issue in accordance with a resolution of the Directors dated October 31, 2018. Genetic Technologies Limited is incorporated in Australia and is a company limited by shares. The Directors have the power to amend and reissue the financial statements.

The Company’s ordinary shares are publicly traded on the Australian Securities Exchange under the symbol GTG and, via Level II American Depositary Receipts, on the NASDAQ Capital Market under the ticker GENE.

2. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

(a) Basis of preparation

Compliance with IFRS

The Financial Report complies with International Financial Reporting Standards (“IFRS”) as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board.

Historical cost convention

These financial statements have been prepared under the historical cost convention except for financial assets and liabilities (including derivative instruments) which are measured at fair value.

Critical accounting estimates

The preparation of financial statements requires the use of certain critical accounting estimates. It also requires Management to exercise its judgement in the process of applying the Group’s accounting policies. The areas involving a higher degree of judgement or complexity, or areas where assumptions and estimates are critical to the financial statements, are disclosed in Note 3.

Going concern

For the year ending June 30, 2018, the Group incurred a total comprehensive loss of \$5,986,838 (2017: \$8,534,481) and net cash outflow from operations of \$5,621,315 (2017: \$6,813,639). As at June 30, 2018 the Group held total cash and cash equivalents of \$5,487,035.

During the 2019 financial year, the Directors expect increased cash outflows from operations as the Company continues to invest resources in expanding the research & development, sales & marketing, and blockchain activities in support of the distribution of BREVAGen^{plus}® and its pipeline of risk assessment products. As a result of these expected cash outflows, the Directors intend to raise new equity funding within the next twelve months in order to ensure the Company continues to hold adequate levels of available cash resources to meet creditors and other commitments. The Company has subsequent to June 30, 2018 executed an equity placement facility with Kentgrove Capital Pty Ltd whereby it has an opportunity to raise equity funding of up to \$20 million in a series of individual placements of up to \$1 million (or a higher amount by mutual agreement) over a period of 20 months, expiring April 7, 2020. The Company has in place an open Placement Prospectus, and although it does not currently have binding commitments from any party to subscribe for Placement Shares, the Placement Offer within the Prospectus provides the Company with greater flexibility should the opportunity arise to offer and issue any of the Placement Shares while this Prospectus remains open. Since June 30, 2018, the Company has issued 100,000,000 shares under this facility, resulting in cash inflows from financing of \$1,350,000. In addition to this facility the Directors will also consider other sources of equity funding through traditional offerings in either Australia or the United States.

The continuing viability of the Company and its ability to continue as a going concern and meet its debts and commitments as they fall due is dependent on the satisfactory completion of planned equity raisings, which are not guaranteed.

2. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (cont.)

(a) Basis of preparation (cont.)

Going Concern (cont.)

Due to the uncertainty surrounding the timing, quantum or the ability to raise additional equity, there is a material uncertainty that may cast significant doubt on the Group’s ability to continue as a going concern and therefore, that it may be unable to realise its assets and discharge its liabilities in the normal course of business. However, the Directors believe that the Group will be successful in the above matters and accordingly, have prepared the financial report on a going concern basis. As such no adjustments have been made to the financial statements relating to the recoverability and classification of the asset carrying amounts or classification of liabilities that might be necessary should the Group not be able to continue as a going concern.

As a U.S. SEC registrant, the Company is required to have its financial statements audited in accordance with Public Company Oversight Board (“PCAOB”) standards. References in these IFRS financial statements to matters that may cast significant doubt about the Company’s ability to continue as a going concern also raise substantial doubt as contemplated by the PCAOB standards.

(b) New accounting standards and interpretations

(i) Standards and Interpretations affecting amounts reported in the current period (and/or prior period)

The group has not applied any new standards or amendments for the first time for their annual reporting period commencing July 1, 2017.

(ii) Standards and Interpretations in issue but not yet adopted

In respect of the year ended June 30, 2018, the Group has assessed all new Australian accounting standards, and the IFRS equivalent, mandatory for adoption during the current year, noting no new standards which would have a material effect on the disclosure in these financial statements. There has been no effect on the profit and loss or the financial position of the Group. Certain new accounting standards and interpretations have been published that are not mandatory for June 30, 2018 reporting periods.

The Group’s assessment of the impact of these new standards and interpretations is set out below.

Title of Standard	Summary and impact on Group’s financial statements	Application date of the standard	Application date for Group for financial year ending
IFRS 9 Financial Instruments	<p>IFRS 9 Financial Instruments replaces IFRS 139 and addresses and classification, measurement and derecognition of financial assets and liabilities. It also addresses the new hedge accounting requirements, including changes to hedge effectiveness, treatment of hedging costs and risk components that can be hedged.</p> <p>IFRS 9 introduces a new expected loss impairment model that will require entities to account for expected credit losses at the time of recognizing the asset. The Group does not expect the adoption of the new standard to have a material impact on its classification and measurement of the financial assets and liabilities or its results on adoption of the new impairment model.</p> <p>The group has the following financial assets as at the balance date:</p> <p>Cash and cash equivalents</p> <p>Cash and cash equivalents in the balance sheet comprise cash at bank and in hand and short-term deposits with an original maturity of 3 months or less. For the purposes of the cash flow statement, cash and cash equivalents consist of cash and cash equivalents as defined above. Cash at bank earns interest at floating rates based on daily bank deposit rates.</p>	January 1, 2018	June 30, 2019

	<p>Short-term deposits are made for varying periods, depending on the immediate cash requirements of the Group, and earn interest at the respective short-term deposit rates. Given the nature of cash, the expected loss model will not be material.</p> <p>Trade and other receivables</p> <p>Trade receivables, which are non-interest bearing and generally have terms of between 30 to 90 days, are recognized and carried at original invoice amount less an allowance for any uncollectible amounts. An allowance for doubtful debts is made when there is objective evidence that a receivable is impaired. Such evidence includes an assessment of the debtor’s ability and willingness to pay the amount due. The amount of the allowance/impairment loss is measured as the difference between the carrying amount of the trade receivables and the estimated future cash flows expected to be received from the relevant debtors. The Group expects to continue to hold these assets in cash and cash equivalents and thus does not expect to be impacted by the classification and measurement provisions of IFRS 9.</p> <p>The only financial liabilities the group has at the balance date relate to trade and other payables. Trade payables and other payables are carried at amortized cost and represent liabilities for goods and services provided to the Group prior to the end of the financial year that are unpaid and arise when the Group becomes obliged to make future payments in respect of the purchase of these goods and services. Trade payables and other payables generally have terms of between 30 and 60 days. Given the nature of these liabilities, the group does not expect to adopt the fair value option under IFRS9. The Group does not hold any derivative instruments and thus the related impacts of IFRS 9 will not be applicable. The Group has decided not to early adopt IFRS 9.</p>		
IFRS 15 Revenue from Contracts with Customers	<p>IFRS 15 provides a single, principles based five-step model to be applied to all contracts with customers. The five steps in the model are as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. identify contracts with customers 2. identify the separate performance obligations 3. determine the transaction price of the contract 4. allocate the transaction price to each of the separate performance obligations, and 5. Recognize the revenue as each performance obligation is satisfied. <p>Guidance is provided on topics such as the point in which revenue is recognized, accounting for variable consideration, costs of fulfilling and obtaining a contract and various related matters. IFRS 15 must be applied for financial years commencing on or after January 1, 2018. The Group has not adopted AASB 15 before the mandatory date. The Group intends to adopt the standard using the modified retrospective approach which means that the cumulative impact of the adoption will be recognized in retained earnings as of July 1, 2018, and comparative disclosures will not be restated.</p> <p>The adoption of this standard will apply to the recognition of the sales related to the BREVAGEN<i>plus</i> product as the Group’s current sole</p>	January 1, 2018	June 30, 2019

	revenue stream. Revenue generated from this product is not currently material and thus we do not expect there to be any material impact upon adoption.		
IFRS 16 Leases	<p>IFRS 16 will primarily affect the accounting by lessees and will result in the recognition of almost all leases on the balance sheet. The standard removes the current distinction between operating & financing leases and requires recognition of an asset (the right to use the leased item) and financial liability to pay rentals for almost all of the lease contracts. The accounting by lessors, however, will not significantly change</p> <p>The Group is in the process of assessing the potential future impact on the balance sheet of the recently executed lease agreements for premises in Fitzroy and Charlotte, which are considered material.</p> <p>The new standard will result in extended disclosures in the financial statements. The Group has decided not to early adopt IFRS 16</p>	January 1, 2019	June 30, 2020

There are no other standards that are not yet effective and that are expected to have a material impact on the entity in the current or future reporting periods and on foreseeable future transactions.

(c) Principles of consolidation

Subsidiaries

The consolidated financial statements incorporate the assets and liabilities of all subsidiaries of Genetic Technologies Limited (the “Company” or “Parent Entity”) as at June 30, 2018 and the results of all subsidiaries for the year then ended. Genetic Technologies Limited and its subsidiaries together are referred to in this Financial Report as the “Group” or the “Consolidated Entity”.

Subsidiaries are all entities (including structured entities) over which the group has control. The group controls an entity when the group is exposed to, or has rights to, variable returns from its involvement within the entity and has the ability to affect those returns through its power to direct the activities of the entity. Subsidiaries are fully consolidated from the date on which control is transferred to the Group. They are de-consolidated from the date that control ceases.

Intercompany transactions, balances and unrealized gains / losses on transactions between Group companies are eliminated. Unrealized losses are also eliminated unless the transaction provides evidence of the impairment of the asset transferred. Accounting policies of subsidiaries have been changed where necessary to ensure consistency with the Group’s policies. Non-controlling interests in the results and equity of subsidiaries are shown separately in the consolidated statement of comprehensive income, consolidated balance sheet and consolidated statements of changes in equity, respectively.

(d) Segment reporting

Operating segments are reported in a manner consistent with the internal reporting provided to the chief operating decision maker. The chief operating decision maker, who is responsible for allocating resources and assessing the performance of the operating segments, has been identified as the Chief Executive Officer.

(e) Parent entity financial information

The financial information for the parent entity, Genetic Technologies Limited has been prepared on the same basis as the consolidated financial statements, except that investments in subsidiaries are accounted for at cost in the financial statements of Genetic Technologies Limited. Loans to subsidiaries are written down to their recoverable value as at balance date.

(f) Foreign currency translation

The functional and presentation currency of Genetic Technologies Limited and its Australian subsidiaries is the Australian dollar (AUD). Transactions in foreign currencies are initially recorded in the functional currency at the exchange rates ruling at the date of the transaction. Monetary assets and liabilities which are denominated in foreign currencies are retranslated at the rate of exchange ruling at the balance sheet date. All differences are taken to the statement of comprehensive income.

2. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (cont.)

(f) Foreign currency translation (cont.)

Non-monetary items that are measured in terms of historical cost in a foreign currency are translated using the exchange rate ruling at the date of the initial transaction. Non-monetary items measured at fair value in a foreign currency are translated using the exchange rates ruling at the date when the fair value was determined. The functional currencies of the Company’s two overseas subsidiaries are as follows:

GeneType Corporation — United States dollars (USD)
Phenogen Sciences Inc. — United States dollars (USD)

As at the reporting date, the assets and liabilities of these subsidiaries are translated into the presentation currency of Genetic Technologies Limited at the rate of exchange ruling at the balance sheet date and the statement of comprehensive income is translated at the weighted average exchange rates for the period unless this is not a reasonable approximation of the cumulative effect of the rates prevailing on the transaction dates, in which case income and expenses are translated at the dates of the transactions. The exchange differences arising on the retranslation are recognized in other comprehensive income and taken directly to a separate component of equity. On disposal of a foreign entity, the deferred cumulative amount recognized in equity relating to that particular foreign operation is recognized in the statement of comprehensive income.

(g) Earnings per share (“EPS”)

Basic EPS is calculated by dividing the profit attributable to owners of the Company, excluding any costs of servicing equity other than ordinary shares, by the weighted average number of ordinary shares outstanding during the financial year. Diluted EPS adjusts the figures used in the determination of basic EPS to take into account the after income tax effect of interest and other financing costs associated with dilutive potential ordinary shares and the weighted average number of ordinary shares that would have been outstanding assuming the conversion of all dilutive potential ordinary shares.

(h) Revenue recognition

Revenues are recognized to the extent that it is probable that the economic benefits will flow to the entity and the revenues can be reliably measured. Revenues are recognized at the fair value of the consideration received or receivable net of the amounts of Goods and Services Tax. The following recognition criteria must also be met before revenue is recognized:

Genetic testing revenues

The Company operates facilities which provide genetic testing services. The Company recognises revenue from the provision of these services when the services have been completed.

Interest received

Revenue is recognized as the interest accrues using the effective interest method.

Government Grants

Research and development tax incentive

The Australian government replaced the research and development tax concession with research and development (R&D) tax incentive from July 1, 2011. The R&D tax incentive applies to expenditure incurred and the use of depreciating assets in an income year commencing on or after July 1, 2011. A refundable tax offset is available to eligible companies with an annual aggregate turnover of less than \$20 million. Management has assessed the Group’s activities and expenditure to determine which are likely to be eligible under the incentive scheme. The Group accounts for the R&D tax incentive as a government grant. The grant is recognized as other income over the period in which the R&D expense is recognized.

Other

Other Grants from the government are recognized at their fair value where there is a reasonable assurance that the grant will be received and the company will comply with all attached conditions.

(i) Share-based payment transactions

The fair value of options granted under an Employee Option Plan is recognized as an employee benefit expense with a corresponding increase in equity. The fair value is measured at grant date and recognized over the vesting period over which all of the specified vesting conditions are to be satisfied. The fair value at grant date is determined by management with the assistance of an independent valuer, using a Black-Scholes option pricing model or a Monte Carlo simulation analysis. The total amount to be expensed is determined by reference to the fair value of the options granted;

2. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (cont.)

(i) Share-based payment transactions (cont.)

- including any market performance conditions (e.g. the entities share price)
- excluding the impact of any service and non-market performance vesting conditions (e.g. remaining an employee over a specified time period)

The cumulative employee benefits expense recognized at each reporting date until vesting date reflects (i) the extent to which the vesting period has expired; and (ii) the number of awards that, in the opinion of the Directors of the Group, will ultimately vest. This opinion is formed based on the best information available at balance date.

Where the terms of an equity-settled award are modified, as a minimum an expense is recognized as if the terms had not been modified. In addition, an expense is recognized for any increase in the value of the transaction as a result of the modification, as at the date of modification. Where appropriate, the dilutive effect of outstanding options is reflected as additional share dilution in the computation of diluted earnings per share. The Company's policy is to treat the options of terminated employees as forfeitures.

(j) Income tax

The income tax expense or revenue for the period is the tax payable on the current period's taxable income based on the national income tax rate for each jurisdiction adjusted by changes in deferred tax assets and liabilities attributable to temporary differences and unused tax losses.

The current income tax charge is calculated on the basis of the tax laws enacted or substantively enacted at the end of the reporting period in the countries where the company's subsidiaries and associates operate and generate taxable income.

Deferred income tax is provided in full, using the liability method, on temporary differences arising between the tax bases of assets and liabilities and their carrying amounts in the consolidated financial statements. However, the deferred income tax is not accounted for if it arises from initial recognition of an asset or liability in a transaction other than a business combination that, at the time of the transaction, affects neither accounting nor taxable profit or loss. Deferred income tax is determined using tax rates (and laws) that have been enacted or substantially enacted by the balance sheet date and are expected to apply when the related deferred income tax asset is realised or the deferred income tax liability is settled. Deferred tax assets are recognised for deductible temporary differences and unused tax losses only if it is probable that future taxable amounts will be available to utilise those temporary differences and losses.

Deferred tax assets are recognised for deductible temporary differences and unused tax losses only if it is probable that future taxable amounts will be available to utilise those temporary differences and losses. Deferred tax liabilities and assets are not recognised for temporary differences between the carrying amount and tax bases of investments in controlled entities where the parent entity is able to control the timing of the reversal of the temporary differences and it is probable that the differences will not reverse in the foreseeable future. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are offset when there is a legally enforceable right to offset current tax assets and liabilities and when the deferred tax balances relate to the same taxation authority. Current tax assets and tax liabilities are offset where the entity has a legally enforceable right to offset and intends either to settle on a net basis, or to realise the asset and settle the liability simultaneously. Current and deferred tax balances attributable to amounts recognised directly in equity are also recognised directly in equity. Current and deferred tax is recognised in profit or loss, except to the extent that it relates to items recognised in other comprehensive income or directly in equity. In this case, the tax is also recognised in other comprehensive income or directly in equity, respectively.

Tax consolidation legislation

Genetic Technologies Limited ("GTG") and its wholly-owned Australian-resident subsidiaries have implemented the tax consolidation legislation. The head entity, GTG, and the subsidiaries in the tax consolidated group account for their own current and deferred tax amounts. These tax amounts are measured as if each entity in the tax consolidated group continues to be a stand-alone taxpayer in its own right.

In addition to its own current and deferred tax amounts, GTG also recognizes the current tax assets / liabilities and the deferred tax assets arising from unused tax losses and tax credits assumed from subsidiaries in the tax consolidated group. Assets or liabilities arising under tax funding agreements with the tax consolidated entities are recognized as amounts receivable from or payable to other entities in the Group. Any difference between the amounts assumed and amounts receivable or payable under the tax funding agreements are recognized as a contribution to (or distribution from) wholly-owned tax subsidiaries.

2. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (cont.)

(k) Other taxes

Revenues, expenses and assets are recognized net of the amount of Goods and Services Tax (GST) except where the GST incurred on a purchase of goods and services is not recoverable from the taxation authority, in which case the GST is recognized as part of the cost of acquisition of the asset or as part of the expense item as applicable; and receivables and payables are stated with the amount of GST included. The net amount of GST recoverable from, or payable to, the taxation authority is included as part of receivables or payables in the balance sheet. Cash flows are included in the cash flow statement on a gross basis and the GST component arising from investing and financing activities, which is recoverable from / payable to the taxation authority, are classified as operating cash flows.

(l) Withholding tax

The Group generates revenues from the granting of licenses to parties resident in overseas countries. Such revenues may, in certain circumstances, be subject to the deduction of local withholding tax. In such cases, revenues are recorded net of any withholding tax deducted.

(m) Finance costs

Finance costs are recognized using the effective interest rate method.

(n) Cash and cash equivalents

Cash and cash equivalents in the balance sheet comprise cash at bank and in hand and short-term deposits with an original maturity of 3 months or less. For the purposes of the cash flow statement, cash and cash equivalents consist of cash and cash equivalents as defined above. Cash at bank earns interest at floating rates based on daily bank deposit rates. Short-term deposits are made for varying periods, depending on the immediate cash requirements of the Group, and earn interest at the respective short-term deposit rates.

(o) Trade and other receivables

Trade receivables, which are non-interest bearing and generally have terms of between 30 to 90 days, are recognized and carried at original invoice amount less an allowance for any uncollectible amounts. An allowance for doubtful debts is made when there is objective evidence that a receivable is impaired. Such evidence includes an assessment of the debtor's ability and willingness to pay the amount due. The amount of the allowance/impairment loss is measured as the difference between the carrying amount of the trade receivables and the estimated future cash flows expected to be received from the relevant debtors.

(p) Inventories

Inventories principally comprise laboratory and other supplies and are valued at the lower of cost and net realizable value. Inventory costs are recognized as the purchase price of items from suppliers plus freight inwards and any applicable landing charges. Costs are assigned on the basis of weighted average cost.

(q) Property, plant and equipment

Plant and equipment is stated at cost less accumulated depreciation and any impairment in value. Depreciation is calculated on a straight-line basis over the estimated useful life of the respective asset as follows:

- Laboratory equipment — 3 to 5 years
- Computer equipment — 3 years
- Office equipment — 3 to 5 years
- Leasehold improvements — lease term, being between 1 and 3 years

Costs relating to day-to-day servicing of any item of property, plant and equipment are recognized in profit or loss as incurred. The cost of replacing larger parts of some items of property, plant and equipment are capitalized when incurred and depreciated over the period until their next scheduled replacement, with the replacement parts being subsequently written off.

2. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (cont.)

(r) Intangible assets

Patents

Patents held by the Group are used in the licensing, testing and research areas and are carried at cost and amortized on a straight-line basis over their useful lives, being 10 years. External costs incurred in filing and protecting patent applications, for which no future benefit is reasonably assured, are expensed as incurred.

Research and development costs

Costs relating to research activities are expensed as incurred. An intangible asset arising from development expenditure on an internal project is recognized only when the Group can demonstrate the technical feasibility of completing the intangible asset so that it will be available for use or sale, its intention to complete and its ability to use or sell the asset, how the asset will generate future economic benefits, the availability of resources to complete the development and the ability to measure reliably the expenditure attributable to the intangible asset during its development. To date, all development costs have been expensed as incurred as their recoverability cannot be regarded as assured.

(s) Impairment of assets

The Group assesses at each reporting date whether there is an indication that an asset may be impaired. If any such indication exists, the Group makes an estimate of the asset's recoverable amount. An asset's recoverable amount is the higher of its fair value less costs of disposal or its value in use and is determined for an individual asset, unless the asset does not generate cash inflows that are largely independent of those from other assets or groups of assets and the asset's value-in-use cannot be estimated to be close to its fair value. In such cases, the asset is tested for impairment as part of the cash-generating unit to which it belongs. When the carrying amount of an asset or cash-generating unit exceeds its recoverable amount, the asset or cash-generating unit is considered impaired and is written down to its recoverable amount.

In assessing value in use, the estimated future cash flows are discounted to their present value using a pre-tax discount rate that reflects current market assessments of the time value of money and the risks specific to the asset. Impairment losses relating to operations are recognized in those expense categories consistent with the function of the impaired asset unless the asset is carried at its revalued amount, in which case the impairment loss is treated as a revaluation decrease.

An assessment is made at each reporting date as to whether there is any indication that previously recognized impairment losses may no longer exist or may have decreased. If such indication exists, the recoverable amount is estimated. A previously recognized impairment loss is reversed only if there has been a change in the estimates used to determine the asset's recoverable amount since the last impairment loss was recognized. If so, the carrying amount of the asset is increased to its recoverable amount. The increased amount cannot exceed the carrying amount that would have been determined, net of depreciation, had no impairment loss been recognized for the asset in prior years. Such reversal is recognized in profit or loss unless it reverses a decrement previously charged to equity, in which case the reversal is treated as a revaluation increase. After such a reversal, the depreciation charge is adjusted in future periods to allocate the asset's revised carrying amount, less any residual value, on a systematic basis over its remaining useful life.

(t) Employee benefits

(i) Short-term obligations

Provision is made for employee benefits accumulated as a result of employees rendering services up to the reporting date. These benefits include wages and salaries, annual leave and long service leave. Liabilities arising in respect of wages and salaries, expected to be settled within twelve months of the reporting date are measured at their nominal amounts based on remuneration rates which are expected to be paid when the liability is settled. Expenses for non-accumulating sick leave are recognized when the leave is taken during the year and are measured at rates paid or payable.

ii) Other long-term employee benefit obligations

The liabilities for long service leave and annual leave are not expected to be settled wholly within 12 months after the end of the reporting period in which the employee renders the related service. They are therefore recognized in the provision for employee benefits and measured as the present value of expected future payments to be made in respect of services provided by employees up to the end of the reporting period using the projected unit credit method. Consideration is given to expected future wage and salary levels, experience of employee departures and periods of service. Expected future payments are discounted using market yields at the end of the reporting period of corporate bonds with terms and currencies that match, as closely as possible, the estimated future cash outflows.

2. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (cont.)

(t) Employee benefits (cont.)

The obligations are presented as current liabilities in the balance sheet if the entity does not have an unconditional right to defer settlement for at least twelve months after the reporting period, regardless of when the actual settlement is expected to occur.

(iii) Retirement benefit obligations

The Group does not have any defined benefit funds. Statutory contributions to defined contribution superannuation funds are recognized as an expense as they become payable. Prepaid contributions are recognized as an asset to the extent that a cash refund or a reduction in the future payments is available. Statutory contributions are legally enforceable in Australia.

(u) Provisions

Provisions for legal claims, service claims and make good obligations are recognized when the Group has a present obligation (legal or constructive) as a result of a past event, it is probable that an outflow of resources embodying economic benefits will be required to settle the obligation and a reliable estimate can be made of the amount of the obligation. Where the Group expects some or all of a provision to be reimbursed, the reimbursement is recognized as a separate asset but only when the reimbursement is virtually certain. The expense relating to any provision is presented in the statement of comprehensive income net of any reimbursement.

If the effect of the time value of money is material, provisions are determined by discounting the expected future cash flows at a pre-tax rate that reflects market assessments of the time value of money and, where appropriate, the risks specific to the liability. Where discounting is used, the increase in the provision due to the passage of time is recognized as a finance cost.

(v) Trade and other payables

Trade payables and other payables are carried at amortized cost and represent liabilities for goods and services provided to the Group prior to the end of the financial year that are unpaid and arise when the Group becomes obliged to make future payments in respect of the purchase of these goods and services. Trade payables and other payables generally have terms of between 30 and 60 days.

(w) Contributed equity

Issued and paid up capital is recognized at the fair value of the consideration received by the Company. Transaction costs arising on the issue of ordinary shares are recognized directly in equity as a deduction, net of tax, of the proceeds received. The Company has a share-based payment option plan under which options to subscribe for the Company’s shares have been granted to certain executives and other employees.

3. CRITICAL ACCOUNTING ESTIMATES AND JUDGEMENTS

Estimates and judgements are evaluated and based on historical experience and other factors, including expectations of future events that may have a financial impact on the Company and that are believed to be reasonable under the circumstances.

Critical accounting estimates and assumptions

The carrying amounts of certain assets and liabilities are often determined based on estimates and assumptions of future events. The key estimates and assumptions that have a significant risk of causing a material adjustment to the carrying value of certain assets and liabilities within the next annual reporting period are set out below.

Share-based payments transactions

The Group measures the cost of equity-settled transactions with employees by reference to the value of the equity instruments at the date on which they are granted. Management determined the fair value by engaging an independent valuer using a Black-Scholes and Monte Carlo simulation options pricing model.

	Consolidated		
	2018	2017	2016
	\$	\$	\$
4. COST OF SALES			
Inventories used	93,869	172,070	159,256
Direct labour costs	88,690	152,767	199,114
Depreciation expense	65,853	71,139	60,249
Inventories written off (1)	51,676	96,441	324,441
Total cost of sales	<u>300,088</u>	<u>492,417</u>	<u>743,060</u>

(1) Inventories written off include \$24,506 (2017: \$53,856 and 2016: \$218,178) of items that expired during the year.

5. OTHER REVENUE

License fees received (2)	—	—	252,707
Royalties and annuities received (3)	—	—	47,841
Total other revenue	<u>—</u>	<u>—</u>	<u>300,548</u>

(2) License fees received in 2016 included \$149,837 of licensing income from Applera Corporation. This agreement ended in December 2015.

(3) Derived under the Group’s non-coding assertion programme that was discontinued during 2015

6. NON OPERATING INCOME AND EXPENDITURE

Net profit on disposal of plant and equipment	—	52,188	7,132
Research and development tax incentive	299,351	253,159	359,803
Export Marketing & Development Grant	126,907	—	—
Interest income	15,218	38,765	67,100
Rental income	—	—	58,002
Total non operating income and expenditure	<u>441,476</u>	<u>344,112</u>	<u>492,037</u>

7. FOREIGN EXCHANGE GAIN RECLASSIFIED ON LIQUIDATION OF SUBSIDIARY

Reclassification of net foreign exchange gains previously recognised in other comprehensive income, reclassified to profit or loss	527,049
Total gain on liquidation of subsidiary	<u>527,049</u>

Total gain is attributable to the liquidation of GeneType AG, a dormant subsidiary, that was completed on December 13, 2017

	Consolidated		
	2018	2017	2016
	\$	\$	\$
8. EXPENSES			
Amortization of intangible assets	—	63,783	127,564
Depreciation of fixed assets	303,749	307,828	262,510
Net foreign currency losses	—	175,871	427,574
Employee benefits expenses	2,657,232	3,594,936	3,774,770
Operating lease expenses	326,192	310,413	312,586
Research and development expenses	459,026	418,598	395,539

	Consolidated		
	2018	2017	2016
	\$	\$	\$
9. INCOME TAX			
Reconciliation of income tax expense to prima facie tax payable			
Loss before income tax expense	(5,463,872)	(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)
Tax at the Australian tax rate of 27.50% (2017: 27.50% and 2016: 28.50%)	(1,502,565)	(2,311,052)	(2,410,805)
Tax effect amounts which are not deductible / (taxable) in calculating taxable income			
Net impairment losses and other write-downs	—	—	—
Share-based payments expense	35,650	33,079	14,318
Fair value (gains)/ loss on financial liabilities at fair value through profit or loss	—	—	—
Research and development tax incentive	148,346	108,163	116,800
Disposal of Heritage business	—	—	—
Tax effect of inter-company transactions	—	—	—
Withholding tax expense	—	—	849
Other non-deductible items	1,509	1,257	1,450
Other assessable items	—	81,155	—
	(1,317,060)	(2,087,398)	(2,277,388)
Difference in overseas tax rates	67,557	(96,775)	(225,070)
Under /(over) provision	(268,092)	(75,054)	10,583
Research and development tax credit	(82,322)	(69,619)	(102,544)
Tax losses not recognized	1,599,917	2,328,846	2,594,419
Income tax expense	—	—	—
Net deferred tax assets			
Deferred tax assets not recognized			
ImmunAid option fee	—	—	—
Property, plant & equipment	1,381	2,802	3,517
Capital raising costs	347,370	320,417	531,646
Applera settlement	—	—	—
Intangible assets	1,949,601	2,003,505	1,978,065
Provisions	201,492	333,103	209,643
Other	—	—	—
Total deferred tax assets	2,499,844	2,659,827	2,722,871
Deferred tax liabilities not recognized			
Prepayments	—	—	—
Total deferred tax liabilities	—	—	—
Net deferred tax assets on temporary differences not brought to account	(2,499,844)	(2,659,827)	(2,722,871)
Total net deferred tax assets	—	—	—

	Consolidated		
	2018	2017	2016
	\$	\$	\$

9. INCOME TAX (cont.)

Tax losses			
Unused tax losses for which no deferred tax asset has been recognized	87,970,140	80,706,629	74,107,688
Potential tax benefit @ 27.50% (2016: 28.50%)	22,596,182	22,194,323	21,120,691

Subject to the Group continuing to meet the relevant statutory tests, the tax losses are available for offset against future taxable income.

At June 30, 2018, the group had a potential tax benefit related to tax losses carried forward of \$22,596,182. Such amount includes net losses of \$5,155,038 related to subsidiaries in the United States (U.S.). The Tax Cuts and Jobs Act (TCJA) enacted by Congress in the U.S on December 22, 2017 cut the top corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21%. For tax years beginning after December 31, 2017, the graduated corporate tax rate structure is eliminated and corporate taxable income will be taxed at 21-percent flat rate. Additionally, the previous 20-year limitation on carry forward net operating losses (NOL’s) has been removed, allowing the NOL’s to be carried forward indefinitely. The remaining tax losses carried forward of \$ 17,441,144 are indefinite and are attributable to the Group’s operations in Australia. As such the total unused tax losses available to the Group, equal \$22,596,182.

As at balance date, there are unrecognized tax losses with a benefit of approximately \$22,596,182 (2017: \$22,194,323 and 2016: \$21,120,691) that have not been recognized as a deferred tax asset to the Group. These unrecognized deferred tax assets will only be obtained if:

- (a) The Group companies derive future assessable income of a nature and amount sufficient to enable the benefits to be realized;
- (b) The Group companies continue to comply with the conditions for deductibility imposed by the law; and
- (c) No changes in tax legislation adversely affect the Group companies from realizing the benefit.

Tax consolidation legislation

Genetic Technologies Limited and its wholly-owned Australian subsidiaries implemented the tax consolidation legislation as from July 1, 2003. The accounting policy in relation to this legislation is set out in Note 2(j).

The entities in the tax consolidated group have entered into a Tax Sharing Agreement which, in the opinion of the Directors, limits the joint and several liabilities of the wholly-owned entities in the case of a default by the head entity, Genetic Technologies Limited.

The entities have also entered into a Tax Funding Agreement under which the wholly-owned entities fully compensate Genetic Technologies Limited for any current tax payable assumed and are compensated by Genetic Technologies Limited for any current tax receivable and deferred tax assets relating to unused tax losses or unused tax credits that are transferred to Genetic Technologies Limited under the tax consolidation legislation. The funding amounts are determined by reference to the amounts recognized in the respective subsidiaries’ financial statements.

The amounts receivable or payable under the Tax Funding Agreement are due upon receipt of the funding advice from the head entity, which is issued as soon as practicable after the end of each financial year.

As at June 30, 2018, there are no unrecognised temporary differences associated with the Group’s investments in subsidiaries, as the Group has no liability for additional taxation should unremitted earnings be remitted (2017: \$nil).

10. LOSS PER SHARE

The following reflects the income and share data used in the calculations of basic and diluted loss per share:

Loss for the year attributable to the owners of Genetic Technologies Limited	(5,463,872)	(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)
Weighted average number of ordinary shares used in calculating loss per share	2,435,282,724	2,121,638,888	1,715,214,158

Note: None of the 55,102,778 (2017: 75,102,778 and 2016: 53,852,778) options over the Company’s ordinary shares that were outstanding as at the reporting date are considered to be dilutive for the purposes of calculating diluted earnings per share.

	Consolidated		
	2018	2017	2016
	\$	\$	\$
11. CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS			
Reconciliation of cash and cash equivalents			
Cash at bank and on hand	5,487,035	10,988,255	11,179,687
Total cash and cash equivalents	<u>5,487,035</u>	<u>10,988,255</u>	<u>11,179,687</u>
Reconciliation of loss for the year			
Reconciliation of loss for the year after income tax to net cash flows used in operating activities is as follows:			
Loss for the year after income tax	(5,463,872)	(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)
<i>Adjust for non-cash items</i>			
Amortization and depreciation expenses	303,749	371,611	390,074
Impairment of intangible assets	—	544,694	—
Share-based payments expense	129,635	120,287	50,239
Non-cash rental income	—	—	(58,002)
Net (profit) / loss on disposal of plant and equipment	—	(52,188)	(7,132)
Net (gains) / losses on liquidation of subsidiary	(527,049)	—	—
Net foreign exchange (gains) / losses	(128,360)	175,038	412,579
<i>Adjust for changes in assets and liabilities</i>			
(Increase) / decrease in trade and other receivables	124,889	204,501	84,178
(Increase) / decrease in prepayments and other assets	14,843	103,488	189,178
Increase / (decrease) in trade and other payables	47,027	60,120	(342,273)
Increase / (decrease) in provisions	(122,177)	62,636	13,286
Net cash flows from / (used in) operating activities	<u>(5,621,315)</u>	<u>(6,813,639)</u>	<u>(7,726,838)</u>
Financing facilities available			
As at June 30, 2018, the following financing facilities had been negotiated and were available:			
<i>Total facilities</i>			
Credit cards	183,770	306,128	311,269
<i>Facilities used as at reporting date</i>			
Credit cards	(12,031)	(12,428)	(32,051)
<i>Facilities unused as at reporting date</i>			
Credit cards	171,739	293,700	279,218

	Consolidated	
	2018	2017
	\$	\$
12. TRADE AND OTHER RECEIVABLES (CURRENT)		
Trade receivables	10,503	200,837
Less: provision for doubtful debts	—	—
Net trade receivables	10,503	200,837
Other receivables	290,880	225,435
Total net current trade and other receivables	301,383	426,272

Note: Trade and other receivables for the Group include amounts due in US dollars of USD 7,114 (2017: USD 153,829).

Refer Note 28 for details of aging, interest rate and credit risks applicable to trade and other receivables for which, due to their short-term nature, their carrying value approximates their fair value.

13. PREPAYMENTS AND OTHER ASSETS (CURRENT)		
Prepayments	139,767	136,923
Inventories at the lower of cost and net realizable value	59,007	76,822
Performance bond and deposits	3,505	3,377
Total current prepayments and other assets	202,279	217,122

	Consolidated				
	2018 \$	2017 \$			
14. PROPERTY, PLANT AND EQUIPMENT					
Laboratory equipment, at cost	1,451,389	1,451,389			
Less: accumulated depreciation	(1,355,397)	(1,209,553)			
Net laboratory equipment	95,992	241,836			
Computer equipment, at cost	609,550	607,165			
Less: accumulated depreciation	(563,208)	(523,278)			
Net computer equipment	46,342	83,887			
Office equipment, at cost	167,564	167,564			
Less: accumulated depreciation	(166,807)	(165,805)			
Net office equipment	757	1,759			
Equipment under hire purchase, at cost	594,626	594,626			
Less: accumulated depreciation	(594,626)	(594,626)			
Net equipment under hire purchase	—	—			
Leasehold improvements, at cost	462,797	462,797			
Less: accumulated depreciation	(430,604)	(313,631)			
Net leasehold improvements	32,193	149,166			
Total net property, plant and equipment	175,284	476,648			
Reconciliation of property, plant and equipment					
Opening gross carrying amount	3,283,541	3,049,462			
Add: additions purchased during the year	2,385	234,799			
Less: disposals made during the year	—	(720)			
Closing gross carrying amount	3,285,926	3,283,541			
Opening accumulated depreciation and impairment losses	(2,806,893)	(2,499,323)			
Add: disposals made during the year	—	258			
Less: depreciation expense charged	(303,749)	(307,828)			
Closing accumulated depreciation and impairment losses	(3,110,642)	(2,806,893)			
Total net property, plant and equipment	175,284	476,648			
Reconciliation of movements in property, plant and equipment by asset category					
Asset category	Opening net carrying amount \$	Additions during year \$	Disposals during year \$	Depreciation expense \$	Closing net carrying amount \$
Laboratory equipment	241,836	—	—	(145,844)	95,992
Computer equipment	83,887	2,385	—	(39,930)	46,342
Office equipment	1,759	—	—	(1,002)	757
Leasehold improvements	149,166	—	—	(116,973)	32,193
Totals	476,648	2,385	—	(303,749)	175,284

	Consolidated	
	2018	2017
	\$	\$
15. INTANGIBLE ASSETS		
Patents		
Patents, at cost	—	36,662,592
Less: accumulated amortization	—	(32,950,533)
Less: impairment losses	—	(3,712,059)
Total net patents	—	—
Other intangible assets		
Assets associated with BREVAGen™ breast cancer risk test, at cost	—	1,033,273
Less: accumulated amortization	—	(568,300)
Less: impairment losses	—	(464,973)
Total net other intangible assets	—	—
Total net intangible assets	—	—
Reconciliation of patents		
Opening net carrying amount	—	91,840
Less: amortization expense charged (refer below)	—	(12,119)
Less: impairment expense	—	(79,721)
Total net patents	—	—
Reconciliation of other intangible assets		
Opening net carrying amount	—	516,637
Less: amortization expense charged (refer below)	—	(51,664)
Less: impairment expense	—	—
Total net other intangible assets	—	(464,973)

Impairment

Slow growth rates in the market adoption of the BREVAGen^{plus}® breast cancer risk assessment test contributing to net losses represented an impairment triggering event. The Group performed an impairment assessment, which resulted in a non-cash impairment of the Patents and other Intangible assets associated with the BREVAGen™ test of \$544,694 being recorded at December 31, 2016. There have been no indications of a change in the estimates used to determine the assets recoverable amount since the last impairment loss was recognized and as such there is no reversal in the current year ended June 30, 2018.

In order to support this conclusion, the Company undertook an impairment assessment as follows:

- i. calculating the value in use of each Intangible asset using a discounted cash flow model. These models used cash flows (revenues, expenses and capital expenditure) for each asset based on their remaining useful lives of approximately 4 years. The cash flows were then discounted to net present values at an average of the most recent rates utilized by other Companies in the industry in which the Group operates and have been assessed by management to align with the long term growth profile of the Company. A pre-tax discount rate of 14.5%, and a growth rate estimate of 2.0% was used throughout the value in use model, and
- ii. comparing the resulting value in use of each Intangible asset to their respective book values

The Company also performed sensitivity analysis over the value in use calculations by varying the assumptions used to assess the impact on the valuations.

15. INTANGIBLE ASSETS (cont.)

Impairment (cont.)

On consideration of all of these key assumptions the Company, in line with its impairment testing policy has concluded that the intangible asset should be fully impaired at year end, and that a non-cash impairment expense of \$544,694 be recognized at June 30, 2017.

Remaining useful lives

The assets associated with the BREVAGen™ breast cancer risk test had a remaining useful life of 4 years as at June 30, 2017.

Disclosure of expenses

The total amortization expense charged during the year ended June 30, 2017 (2018: Nil) in respect of intangible assets of \$63,783 is disclosed in the consolidated statement of comprehensive income under the heading of laboratory and research and development costs.

Consolidated	
2018	2017
\$	\$

16. TRADE AND OTHER PAYABLES (CURRENT)

Trade payables	535,923	398,291
Other payables	222,503	195,584
Accrued expenses	186,704	304,228
Total current trade and other payables	945,130	898,103

Note: Trade payables for the Group include amounts due in US dollars of USD 116,063 (2017: USD 137,154) and Swiss francs of CHF 0 (2017: CHF 380).

Refer Note 28 for details of management of interest rate, foreign exchange and liquidity risks applicable to trade and other payables for which, due to their short-term nature, their carrying value approximates their fair value.

17. PROVISIONS (CURRENT AND NON-CURRENT)

Current provisions		
Annual leave	145,449	239,821
Long service leave	268,544	243,411
Make good *	91,590	83,958
Total current provisions	505,583	567,190
Non-current provisions		
Long service leave	3,390	56,328
Make good *	—	7,632
Total non-current provisions	3,390	63,960
Total provisions	508,973	631,150

* Make good provision

Genetic Technologies Limited is required to restore the leased premises situated in Fitzroy, Melbourne to their original condition at the end of the lease terms. A provision has been recognized for the present value of the estimated expenditure required to remove any leasehold improvements. These costs have been capitalized as part of the cost of leasehold improvements and are amortized over the shorter of the term of the lease or the useful life of the assets. See Note 2 (u) for the Group’s other accounting policies relevant to provisions.

	Consolidated	
	2018	2017
	\$	\$
17. PROVISIONS (CURRENT AND NON-CURRENT) (cont.)		
Reconciliation of annual leave provision		
Balance at the beginning of the financial year	239,821	223,100
Add: obligation accrued during the year	155,967	183,613
Less: utilized during the year	(250,289)	(166,892)
Balance at the end of the financial year	145,499	239,821
Reconciliation of long service leave provision		
Balance at the beginning of the financial year	299,739	253,824
(Less)/ Add: obligation accrued during the year	(27,806)	58,699
Less: utilized during the year	—	(12,784)
Balance at the end of the financial year	271,933	299,739

Note: The current provisions for annual leave and long service leave include a total amount of \$325,421 (2017: \$428,891) in respect of obligations which, based on historical evidence, the Company estimates will be settled more than 12 months from balance date.

	Consolidated	
	2018	2017
	\$	\$
18. CONTRIBUTED EQUITY		
Issued and paid-up capital		
Fully paid ordinary shares	122,372,662	122,382,625
Total contributed equity	<u>122,372,662</u>	<u>122,382,625</u>
Movements in shares on issue		
Year ended June 30, 2017	Shares	\$
Balance at the beginning of the financial year	1,715,282,724	115,272,576
Add: shares issued as part of private placements	720,000,000	8,049,369
Add: facility fee rebate on previously issued shares*	—	295,110
Less: transaction costs arising on share issue	—	(1,234,430)
Balance at the end of the financial year	<u>2,435,282,724</u>	<u>122,382,625</u>
Year ended June 30, 2018	Shares	\$
Balance at the beginning of the financial year	2,435,282,724	122,382,625
Less: transaction costs arising on share issue	—	(9,963)
Balance at the end of the financial year	<u>2,435,282,724</u>	<u>122,372,662</u>

* Rebate of a facility fee originally provided to Kentgrove Capital on commencement date of a Standby Equity Placement Facility Agreement entered into in January 2015 that was paid on expiry of the facility agreement on January 21, 2017 in accordance with the agreement, representing a reduction in total equity transaction costs associated with the commencement of the facility.

Terms and conditions of contributed equity

Ordinary shares have the right to receive dividends as declared and, in the event of winding up the Company, to participate in the proceeds from the sale of all surplus assets in proportion to the number of and amounts paid up on shares held. Ordinary shares, which have no par value, entitle their holder to one vote, either in person or by proxy, at a meeting of the Company.

Capital management

When managing capital, Management’s objective is to ensure that the Group continues as a going concern as well as to provide returns for shareholders and benefits for other stakeholders. Management also aims to maintain a capital structure to reduce the entity’s cost of capital.

	Consolidated	
	2018	2017
	\$	\$
19. RESERVES		
Foreign currency translation	765,930	1,288,896
Share-based payments	4,885,232	4,755,597
Total reserves	<u>5,651,162</u>	<u>6,044,493</u>

Reconciliation of foreign currency translation reserve

Balance at the beginning of the financial year	1,288,896	1,419,551
Add: net currency translation gain / (loss)	(522,966)	(130,655)
Balance at the end of the financial year	<u>765,930</u>	<u>1,288,896</u>

Reconciliation of share-based payments reserve

Balance at the beginning of the financial year	4,755,597	4,635,310
Add: share-based payments expense	129,635	120,287
Balance at the end of the financial year	<u>4,885,232</u>	<u>4,755,597</u>

Nature and purpose of reserves

Foreign currency translation reserve

This reserve is used to record exchange differences arising from the translation of the financial statements of foreign subsidiaries.

Share-based payments reserve

This reserve is used to record the value of share-based payments provided to employees and others providing similar services as part of their remuneration.

20. ACCUMULATED LOSSES

Balance at the beginning of the financial year	(117,848,074)	(109,444,248)
Add: net loss attributable to owners of Genetic Technologies Limited	(5,463,872)	(8,403,826)
Balance at the end of the financial year	<u>(123,311,946)</u>	<u>(117,848,074)</u>

21. OPTIONS

As at June 30, 2018, the following options over ordinary shares in the Company were outstanding.

	2018	Weighted ave. exercise price	2017	Weighted ave. exercise price
Unlisted employee options (refer below)	34,736,111	\$ 0.017	54,736,111	\$ 0.016
Unlisted options attached to convertible notes	20,366,667	\$ 0.015	20,366,667	\$ 0.015
	<u>55,102,778</u>	<u>\$ 0.016</u>	<u>75,102,778</u>	<u>\$ 0.016</u>

On November 30, 2001, the Directors of the Company established a Staff Share Plan. On November 19, 2008, the shareholders of the Company approved the introduction of a new Employee Option Plan. Under the terms of the respective Plans, the Directors of the Company may grant options over ordinary shares in Genetic Technologies Limited to executives, consultants and employees of the Group. The options, which are granted at nil cost, are not transferable and are not quoted on the ASX. As at June 30, 2018, there were 3 executives and 1 employees who held options that had been granted under the Plans. Options granted under the Plans carry no rights to dividends and no voting rights.

21. OPTIONS (cont.)

The movements in the number of options granted under the Plans are as follows:

	2018	Weighted ave. exercise price	2017	Weighted ave. exercise price
Unlisted employee options				
Balance at the beginning of the financial year	54,736,111	\$ 0.016	33,486,111	\$ 0.022
Add: options granted during the year	—	—	22,750,000	\$ 0.010
Less: options exercised during the year	—	—	—	—
Less: options forfeited during the year	(20,000,000)	\$ 0.014	(1,500,000)	\$ 0.049
Balance at the end of the financial year	<u>34,736,111</u>	<u>\$ 0.017</u>	<u>54,736,111</u>	<u>\$ 0.016</u>

There were no options exercised under the Employee Option Plan during the year ended June 30, 2018 (2017: Nil).

The numbers of options outstanding as at June 30, 2018 by ASX code, including the respective dates of expiry and exercise prices, are tabled below (refer Note 23 for further information). The options tabled below are not listed on ASX.

Option description	2018	Weighted ave. exercise price	2017	Weighted ave. exercise price
Unlisted employee options				
GTGAD (expiring September 14, 2020)	—	—	250,000	\$ 0.058
GTGAD (expiring November 24, 2020)	19,236,111	\$ 0.020	24,236,111	\$ 0.020
GTGAD (expiring March 31, 2021)	5,000,000	\$ 0.020	7,500,000	\$ 0.020
GTGAD (expiring February 16, 2022)	10,500,000	\$ 0.010	22,750,000	\$ 0.010
	<u>34,736,111</u>	<u>\$ 0.017</u>	<u>54,736,111</u>	<u>\$ 0.016</u>
Unlisted options attached to convertible notes				
GTGAC (expiring December 2, 2018)	20,366,667	\$ 0.015	20,366,667	\$ 0.015
Balance at the end of the financial year	<u>55,102,778</u>	<u>\$ 0.016</u>	<u>75,102,778</u>	<u>\$ 0.016</u>
Exercisable at the end of the financial year	<u>48,102,778</u>	<u>\$ 0.017</u>	<u>36,234,722</u>	<u>\$ 0.017</u>

The weighted average remaining contractual life of options outstanding as at June 30, 2018 was 1.94 years (2017: 3.28 years).

22. SEGMENT INFORMATION

Identification of reportable segments

The Group has identified a sole operating segment as reported that is consistent with the internal reporting provided to the chief operating decision maker and is aligned to the one major revenue stream.

The Groups operating segment is summarized as follows:

Business segments

Segment		Revenues and income			Profit / (loss)
		Sales	Other	Totals	
		\$	\$	\$	\$
Operations	2018	189,254	441,476	630,730	(5,463,872)
	2017	518,506	344,112	862,618	(8,403,826)
	2016	824,586	792,585	1,617,171	(8,458,965)
Segment		Assets	Liabilities	Amortization /depreciation	Purchases of equipment
		\$	\$	\$	\$
Operations	2018	6,165,981	(1,454,103)	(303,749)	2,385
	2017	12,108,297	(1,529,253)	(371,611)	234,799
	2016	13,289,686	(1,406,497)	(390,074)	395,054

Geographic information

Australia — is the home country of the parent entity and the location of the Company’s genetic testing and licensing operations.

USA — is the home of Phenogen Sciences Inc. and GeneType Corporation.

Switzerland — is the home of GeneType AG (Liquidated December 2017).

Geographic information

		Revenues and income			Profit/(Loss)
		Sales	Other	Totals	
		\$	\$	\$	\$
Australia	2018	—	441,476	441,476	(3,504,098)
	2017	18,215	344,112	362,327	(7,000,994)
	2016	220	792,585	792,805	(4,241,451)
USA	2018	189,254	—	189,254	(1,959,774)
	2017	500,291	—	500,291	(1,371,001)
	2016	824,366	—	824,366	(4,197,368)
Other	2018	—	—	—	—
	2017	—	—	—	(31,831)
	2016	—	—	—	(20,146)
Totals	2018	189,254	441,476	630,730	(5,463,872)
	2017	518,506	344,112	862,618	(8,403,826)
	2016	824,586	792,585	1,617,171	(8,458,965)

22. SEGMENT INFORMATION (cont.)

		Assets	Liabilities	Amortization /depreciation	Purchases of Equipment
		\$	\$	\$	\$
Australia	2018	6,004,286	(1,353,718)	(295,150)	2,385
	2017	11,473,094	(1,291,529)	(362,677)	223,096
	2016	12,553,539	(1,199,257)	(379,944)	382,893
USA	2018	161,695	(100,385)	(8,599)	—
	2017	632,419	(233,301)	(8,934)	11,703
	2016	733,168	(202,200)	(10,130)	12,161
Other	2018	—	—	—	—
	2017	2,784	(4,423)	—	—
	2016	2,979	(5,040)	—	—
Totals	2018	6,165,981	(1,454,103)	(303,749)	2,385
	2017	12,108,297	(1,529,253)	(371,611)	234,799
	2016	13,289,686	(1,406,497)	(390,074)	395,054

Additional segment disclosures

Other revenues and income includes interest received of \$15,218 (2017: \$38,765 and 2016: \$67,099).

Expenses includes employee benefits expenses of \$2,657,232 (2017: \$3,594,936 and 2016: \$3,774,770).

Assets - includes cash of \$5,487,035 (2017: \$10,988,255 and 2016: \$11,179,687).

Liabilities includes trade and other payables of \$945,130 (2017: \$898,103 and 2016: \$837,983) and provisions of \$508,973 (2017: \$631,150 and 2016: \$568,514).

Included in the above figures are the following intersegment balances and transactions:

	Consolidated		
	2018	2017	2016
	\$	\$	\$
Loan payable (USA) and loan receivable (Australia)	66,503	348,835	512,816
Foreign exchange gain (USA) and foreign exchange loss (Australia)	981,141	776,295	1,750,759
Cost of sales (USA) and sales (Australia)	38,352	74,762	91,896

Segment products and locations

The principal geographic segment is Australia, with the Company’s headquarters being located in Melbourne in the State of Victoria however the key sales activities take place in the USA.

Major customers

During the years ended June 30, 2018 & June 30, 2017 there was no customer from whom the Group generated revenues representing more than 10% of the total consolidated revenue from operations or outstanding receivables.

23. SHARE BASED PAYMENTS

(a) Employee option plan

On November 30, 2001, the Directors of the Company established a Staff Share Plan. On November 19, 2008, the shareholders of the Company approved the introduction of a new Employee Option Plan. Under the terms of the respective Plans, the Directors may, at their discretion, grant options over the ordinary shares in the Genetic Technologies Limited to executives, consultants, employees, and former Non-Executive Directors, of the Group.

During the year no options over ordinary shares were granted pursuant the Employee Option Plan The following information relates to ordinary shares granted pursuant to the Employee Option Plan at no cost for year ended June 30, 2017;

- i. 1,250,000 options to a number of employees of the Company’s US Subsidiary, Phenogen Sciences Inc. The options vest based on non-market performance conditions (requirement to remain employed by the Company) in three tranches commencing on the date of the 2017 Annual General Meeting (AGM) of the Company and then at each of the 12 and 24 month anniversaries thereafter. The fair value of each option granted is estimated by an external valuer using a Black-Scholes option-pricing model, with assumptions as follows

	2017
Grant Date	Feb 17, 2017
Options issued	1,250,000
Dividend yield	—
Historic volatility and expected volatility	60%
Option exercise price	\$0.010
Weighted average exercise price	\$0.010
Risk-free interest rate	2.19%
Expected life of an option	4.5 years
Model used	Black-Scholes

As at June 30, 2018, there was 1 employee (2017: 4) who held options that had been granted under the Plan.

The expected price volatility is based on the historic volatility (based on the remaining life of the options), adjusted for any expected changes to future volatility due to publicly available information.

- ii. 21,500,000 options to a number of KMP. The options vest based on non-market performance conditions (requirement to remain employed by the Company) in three tranches commencing on the date of the 2017 Annual General Meeting (AGM) of the Company and then at each of the 12 and 24 month anniversaries thereafter. The fair value of each option granted is estimated by an external valuer using a Black-Scholes option-pricing model, with assumptions as follows

	2017
Grant Date	Feb 17, 2017
Options issued	21,500,000
Dividend yield	—
Historic volatility and expected volatility	60%
Option exercise price	\$0.010
Weighted average exercise price	\$0.010
Risk-free interest rate	2.19%
Expected life of an option	4.5 years
Model used	Black-Scholes

23. SHARE BASED PAYMENTS (cont.)

(b) Expenses arising from share-based payment transactions

Total expenses arising from share-based payment transactions recognized during the period as part of employee benefit expense were as follows:

	Consolidated		
	2018	2017	2016
	\$	\$	\$
Options issued under employee option plan	129,635	120,287	50,239
Total	129,635	120,287	50,239

24. COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES

	Consolidated		
	2018	2017	2016
	\$	\$	\$
Operating lease expenditure commitments			
Minimum operating lease payments			
- not later than one year	41,625	227,992	220,486
- later than one year but not later than five years	—	35,676	248,481
- later than five years	—	—	—
Total minimum operating lease payments	41,625	263,668	468,967

As at June 30, 2018, the above operating leases related to the following premises that are currently occupied by the Group:

Location	Landlord	Use	Date of expiry of lease	Minimum payments (\$)
60-66 Hanover Street Fitzroy, Victoria 3065 Australia	Crude Pty. Ltd.	Office / laboratory	August 31, 2018	35,676
9115 Harris Corners Parkway, Suite 320 Charlotte, North Carolina 28269 USA	New Boston Harris Corners LLC	Office	Month to month	5,949
Total				41,625

Apart from the above, there were no other commitments or contingencies as at June 30, 2018.

On July 3, 2018 the lease agreement for the Fitzroy premises in Melbourne was extended for 3 years from September 1, 2018 to August 31, 2021. In addition, Phenogen Sciences Inc. has vacated the Harris Corners Parkway office in Charlotte and entered into a 2 year lease agreement effective July 23, 2018 for premises situated at 1300 Baxter Street, Suite 157, Charlotte, North Carolina.

25. AUDITORS’ REMUNERATION

	Consolidated		
	2018	2017	2016
	\$	\$	\$
Audit and assurance services			
PricewaterhouseCoopers in respect of:			
Audit(1)	288,200	325,972	334,560
Audit related	—	107,451	—
Other audit firms in respect of:			
Audit of the Financial Reports of subsidiaries	—	4,070	5,868
Total remuneration in respect of audit services	288,200	437,493	340,428

(1) Audit fees consist of services that would normally be provided in connection with statutory & regulatory filings or engagements, including services that generally only the independent accountant can reasonably provide.

26. RELATED PARTY DISCLOSURES

Ultimate parent

Genetic Technologies Limited is the ultimate Australian parent company. As at the date of this Report, no shareholder controls more than 50% of the issued capital of the Company.

Transactions within the Group and with other related parties

During the year ended June 30, 2018, the only transactions between entities within the Group and other related parties occurred, are as listed below. Except where noted, all amounts were charged on similar to market terms and at commercial rates.

Debt convertible notes

During the year ended June 30, 2015 the Company finalized the raising of \$2,150,000 via the issue of unlisted secured (debt) notes to existing and new Australian institutional and wholesale investors. The debt notes carried a 10.0% coupon rate, and as approved at the Annual General Meeting, held on November 25, 2014, became convertible notes which could convert into ordinary shares (at a 10.0% discount to the 5 day VWAP). These convertible notes also carry free attached options to purchase further shares in the Company.

\$125,000 of these convertible notes were issued to a holder associated with Dr Lindsay Wakefield, a Company director at the time of issue, on the same terms and conditions as other note holders, all of which were converted during the year ended June 30, 2015. The 8,333,333 share options attached to these convertible notes remain unexercised at June 30, 2018. Dr Muchnicki and Mr Rubinstein, both of whom were elected as Directors of the Company on January 31, 2018, also participated in the debt convertible notes raising, and at June 30, 2018 indirectly held 6,666,667 and 5,000,000 options respectively.

Blockchain Global Limited

As announced by the Company on February 15, 2018, a non-binding terms sheet with Blockchain Global Limited (BCG) was entered to provide a framework for continuing discussions between the two companies, with the proposed transaction being subject to shareholder approval (by non-associated Shareholders); and as announced by the Company on August 2, 2018, a framework agreement with BCG was entered formalizing the non-binding terms sheet and providing a framework for a strategic alliance between the Company and BCG, with this Framework Agreement only becoming binding on the Company obtaining the approval of non-associated Shareholders. This framework includes a proposed issuance of 486,000,000 shares to BCG in 3 tranches subject to the achievement of certain milestones.

A number of Directors of the Company presently or previously have had involvement with BCG. Mr Sam Lee has a direct and indirect share interest in BCG of 21% and is a director of BCG. Mr Peter Rubinstein has a direct and indirect share interest in BCG of

26. RELATED PARTY DISCLOSURES (cont.)

8% and is a consultant to BCG. Dr George Muchnicki has a direct and indirect share interest in BCG of 3.4%. Dr Paul Kasian was previously a director of BCG until July 2018. No transactions between the Company and BCG took place during the year ended June 30, 2018.

There were no transactions with parties related to Key Management Personnel during the year other than that disclosed above.

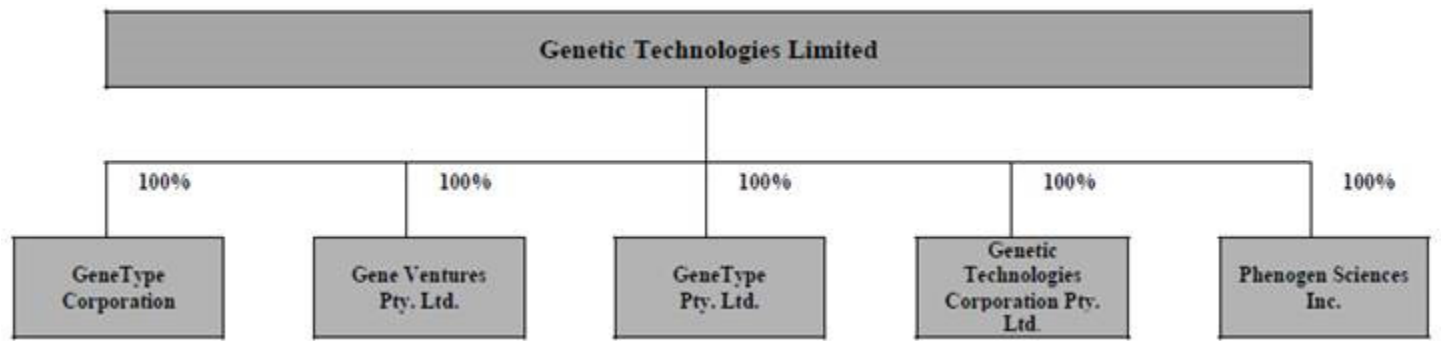
Details of Directors and Key Management Personnel as at balance date

Directors	Executives
Dr Paul Kasian <i>(Chairman and Interim CEO)</i>	Mr Kevin Fischer <i>(Chief Financial Officer)</i>
Dr Lindsay Wakefield <i>(Non-Executive)</i>	Dr Richard Allman <i>(Scientific Director)</i>
Dr Jerzy Muchnicki <i>(Executive Director)</i>	
Mr Peter Rubinstein <i>(Non-Executive)</i>	
Mr Xue Lee <i>(Non-Executive)</i>	

	Consolidated		
	2018	2017	2016
	\$	\$	\$
Remuneration of Key Management Personnel			
Short-term employee benefits	1,215,632	1,533,457	1,350,986
Post-employment benefits	96,315	101,320	104,081
Share-based payments	130,385	121,269	49,445
Other long-term benefits	2,371	61,594	28,552
Termination benefits	164,760	—	53,795
Total remuneration of Key Management Personnel	1,609,463	1,817,640	1,586,859

27. SUBSIDIARIES

The following diagram is a depiction of the Group structure as at June 30, 2018.



Name of Group company	Incorporation details	Group interest (%)		Net carrying value (\$)	
		2018	2017	2018	2017
<i>Entities held directly by parent</i>					
GeneType Pty. Ltd. (Dormant)	September 5, 1990 Victoria, Australia	100%	100%	—	—
Genetic Technologies Corporation Pty. Ltd. (Genetic testing)	October 11, 1996 N.S.W., Australia	100%	100%	2	2
Gene Ventures Pty. Ltd. * (Dormant)	March 7, 2001 N.S.W., Australia	100%	100%	10	10
GeneType AG ** (Dormant)	February 13, 1989 Zug, Switzerland	—	100%	—	—
GeneType Corporation (Dormant)	December 18, 1989 California, U.S.A.	100%	100%	—	—
Phenogen Sciences Inc. (BREVA Gen™)	June 28, 2010 Delaware, U.S.A.	100%	100%	11,006	11,006
Total carrying value				11,018	11,018

* On April 26, 2018, the name of RareCollect Pty Ltd (ACN 096 135 9847) was changed to Gene Ventures Pty Ltd (ACN 096 135 947)

** Liquidation of GeneType AG was completed on December 13, 2017

28. FINANCIAL RISK MANAGEMENT

The Group’s activities expose it to a variety of financial risks such as credit risk, market risk (including foreign currency risk and interest rate risk) and liquidity risk. The Group’s overall risk management program focuses on the unpredictability of financial markets and seeks to minimize potential adverse effects on the financial performance of the Group. The Group uses different methods to measure the different types of risk to which it is exposed. These methods include sensitivity analysis in the case of foreign exchange, interest rate and aging analysis for credit risk.

Risk management is managed by the Executive under guidance provided by the Board of Directors via its Audit Committee, which provides guidance for overall risk management, as well as policies covering specific areas, such as credit risk, foreign exchange risk and interest rate risk. The Committee identifies and evaluates financial risks in close cooperation with the Group’s executive management.

The Group’s principal financial instruments comprise cash and cash equivalents. The Group also has other financial assets and liabilities, such as trade receivables and payables, which arise directly from its operations.

The Group does not typically enter into derivative transactions, such as interest rate swaps or forward currency contracts. It is, and has been throughout the period under review, the Group’s policy that no trading in financial instruments shall be undertaken. The main risks arising from the Group’s financial instruments are credit risk exposures, foreign currency risk, interest rate risk and liquidity risk. The policies for managing each of these risks are summarized below.

Details of the significant accounting policies and methods adopted, including the criteria for recognition, the basis of measurement and the basis on which income and expenses are recognized, in respect of each class of financial asset, financial liability and equity instrument are disclosed in Note 2.

The Group holds the following financial instruments:

	Consolidated	
	2018	2017
	\$	\$
Financial assets		
Cash at bank / on hand	5,487,035	10,988,255
Trade and other receivables	301,383	426,272
Performance bond and deposits	3,505	3,376
Total financial assets	5,791,923	11,417,903
Financial liabilities		
Trade and other payables	945,130	898,103
Total financial liabilities	945,130	898,103

Credit risk

The Group’s credit risk is managed on a Group basis. Credit risk arises from cash and cash equivalents and deposits with banks and financial institutions, as well as credit exposures to customers, including outstanding receivables and committed transactions. Other receivables represent amounts accrued for which reimbursement will be applied for from the Australian Taxation Authority under the Governments Research & Development grant. The maximum exposures to credit risk at June 30, 2018 in relation to each class of recognized financial asset is the carrying amount of those assets, as indicated in the balance sheet.

Financial assets included on the balance sheet that potentially subject the Group to concentration of credit risk consist principally of cash and cash equivalents and trade receivables. In accordance with the guidelines of the Group’s Short Term Investment Policy, the Group minimizes this concentration of risk by placing its cash and cash equivalents with financial institutions that maintain superior credit ratings in order to limit the degree of credit exposure. For banks and financial institutions, only independently-rated parties with a minimum rating of “A-1” are accepted. The Group has also established guidelines relative to credit ratings, diversification and maturities that seek to maintain safety and liquidity. The Group does not require collateral to provide credit to its customers. On April 1, 2017, a change to the billing policy for the BREVAGen^{plus}® test was introduced whereby the test is now only provided on a patient self-pay basis. This is in contrast to prior periods, whereby once a BREVAGenTM or BREVAGen^{plus}® test had been performed, historically a patient elected to self-pay or where applicable seek healthcare provider payment on receipt of the outcome of the test. The nature of this revenue recognition cycle increased the risk of credit exposure. The Group has not entered into any transactions that qualify as a financial derivative instrument.

28. FINANCIAL RISK MANAGEMENT (cont.)

Credit risk (cont.)

The trade receivables balance is reflective of historical collection rates which are monitored on an ongoing basis and adjusted accordingly based on changing collection and test data. As at June 30, 2018, the balance of the Group’s total accrued net trade receivables was \$10,503 (2017: \$200,837 (refer Note 12)).

Credit risk further arises in relation to financial guarantees given by the Group to certain parties in respect of obligations of its subsidiaries. Such guarantees are only provided in exceptional circumstances.

An analysis of the aging of trade and other receivables is provided below:

	Consolidated	
	2018	2017
	\$	\$
Net trade and other receivables		
Current (less than 30 days)	294,454	426,272
31 days to 60 days	3142	—
61 days to 90 days (note)	783	—
Greater than 90 days (note)	3004	—
Total net trade and other receivables (Note 12)	301,383	426,272

Market risk

Foreign currency risk

The Group operates internationally and is exposed to foreign currency exchange risk, primarily with respect to the US dollar, through financial assets and liabilities. It is the Group’s policy not to hedge these transactions as the exposure is considered to be minimal from a consolidated operations perspective. Further, as the Group incurs expenses which are payable in US dollars, the financial assets that are held in US dollars provide a natural hedge for the Group.

Foreign exchange risk arises from planned future commercial transactions and recognized assets and liabilities denominated in a currency that is not the entity’s functional currency and net investments in foreign operations. The risk is measured using sensitivity analysis and cash flow forecasting.

The Group has a Foreign Exchange Management Policy which was developed to establish a formal framework and procedures for the efficient management of the financial risks that impact on Genetic Technologies Limited through its activities outside of Australia, predominantly in the United States. The policy governs the way in which the financial assets and liabilities of the Group that are denominated in foreign currencies are managed and any risks associated with that management are identified and addressed. Under the policy, which is updated on a regular basis as circumstances dictate, the Group generally retains in foreign currency only sufficient funds to meet the expected expenditures in that currency. Surplus funds are converted into Australian dollars as and when deemed appropriate by the Board in consultation with the CFO.

28. FINANCIAL RISK MANAGEMENT (cont.)

Market risk (cont.)

As at June 30, 2018, the Group held the following financial assets and liabilities that were denominated in foreign currencies:

Consolidated	Year	USD	EUR	CHF
Financial assets				
Cash at bank / on hand	2018	2,154,291	28,952	—
	2017	6,203,335	30,852	—
Total financial assets	2018	2,154,291	28,952	—
	2017	6,203,335	30,852	—
Financial liabilities				
Trade and other payables	2018	116,063	—	—
	2017	99,540	—	—
Total financial liabilities	2018	116,063	—	—
	2017	99,540	—	—

Notes: USD — United States dollars EUR — European euros CHF — Swiss francs

During the year ended June 30, 2018, the Australian dollar / US dollar exchange rate weakened by 3.7%, from 0.7686 at the beginning of the year to 0.7403 at the end of the year.

Based on the financial instruments held at June 30, 2018, had the Australian dollar weakened/ strengthened by 10% against the US dollar with all other variables held constant, the Group’s loss for the year would have been \$306,000 lower/ \$250,000 higher (2017: loss \$882,000 lower / loss \$722,000 higher), mainly as a result of changes in the values of cash and cash equivalents which are denominated in US dollars, as detailed in the above tables.

Interest rate risk

The Group’s main interest rate risk arises in relation to its short-term deposits with various financial institutions. If rates were to decrease, the Group may generate less interest revenue from such deposits. However, given the relatively short duration of such deposits, the associate risk is relatively minimal.

The Group has a Short Term Investment Policy which was developed to manage the Group’s surplus cash and cash equivalents. In this context, the Group adopts a prudent approach that is tailored to cash forecasts rather than seeking high returns that may compromise access to funds as and when they are required. Under the policy, the Group deposits its surplus cash in a range of deposits / securities over different time frames and with different institutions in order to diversify its portfolio and minimize risk.

On a monthly basis, Management provides the Board with a detailed list of all cash and cash equivalents, showing the periods over which the cash has been deposited, the name and credit rating of the institution holding the deposit and the interest rate at which the funds have been deposited.

At June 30, 2018, if interest rates had changed by +/- 50 basis points from the year-end rates, with all other variables held constant, the Group’s loss for the year would have been \$12,000 lower / higher (2017: loss \$12,000 lower / higher), as a result of higher / lower interest income from cash and cash equivalents. Consolidated equity for the Group would have been \$12,000 higher / lower (2017: \$12,000 higher / lower) mainly as a result of an increase / decrease in the fair value of cash and cash equivalents.

28. FINANCIAL RISK MANAGEMENT (cont.)

Market risk (cont.)

The exposure to interest rate risks and the effective interest rates of financial assets and liabilities, both recognized and unrealized, for the Group is as follows:

Consolidated	Year	Floating rate \$	Fixed rate \$	Carrying amount \$	Weighted ave. effective rate %	Ave. maturity Period Days
Financial assets						
Cash at bank / on hand	2018	2,394,754	—	2,394,754	1.74%	At call
	2017	2,468,730	—	2,468,730	1.75%	At call
Performance bond / deposits	2018	—	3,505	3,505	—	At call
	2017	—	3,376	3,376	—	At call
Totals	2018	2,394,754	3,505	2,398,259		
	2017	2,468,730	3,376	2,472,106		
Financial liabilities						
Financial liabilities at fair value through profit or loss	2018	—	—	—	—	—
	2017	—	—	—	—	—
Totals	2018	—	—	—		
	2017	—	—	—		

Note The Company holds the balance of its cash in non-interest bearing bank accounts.

Liquidity risk

Prudent liquidity risk management implies maintaining sufficient cash and cash equivalents and the availability of funding through an adequate amount of committed credit facilities, such as its hire purchase and credit card facilities. The Group manages liquidity risk by continuously monitoring forecast and actual cash flows and, wherever possible, matching the maturity profiles of financial assets and liabilities. Due to the dynamic nature of the underlying businesses, Management aims to maintain flexibility in funding by keeping committed credit lines available. Surplus funds are generally only invested in instruments that are tradeable in highly liquid markets. Refer note 2(a) for further information on the material uncertainty that may cast significant doubt on the Company’s ability to continue as a going concern.

28. FINANCIAL RISK MANAGEMENT (cont.)

Liquidity risk (cont.)

A balanced view of cash inflows and outflows affecting the Group is summarized in the table below:

Consolidated	Year	< 6 months \$	6 to 12 months \$	1 to 5 years \$	> 5 years \$	Totals \$
Financial assets						
Cash at bank / on hand	2018	5,487,035	—	—	—	5,487,035
	2017	10,988,255	—	—	—	10,988,255
Trade and other receivables	2018	301,383	—	—	—	301,383
	2017	426,272	—	—	—	426,272
Performance bond and deposits	2018	3,505	—	—	—	3,505
	2017	3,376	—	—	—	3,376
Total financial assets	2018	5,791,923	—	—	—	5,791,923
	2017	11,417,903	—	—	—	11,417,903
Financial liabilities						
Trade and other payables	2018	945,130	—	—	—	945,130
	2017	898,103	—	—	—	898,103
Total financial liabilities	2018	945,130	—	—	—	945,130
	2017	898,103	—	—	—	898,103
Net maturity	2018	4,846,793	—	—	—	4,846,793
	2017	10,519,800	—	—	—	10,519,800

The Group had access to the following undrawn borrowing facility as at June 30, 2018:

Nature of facility	Facility limit \$	Amount used \$	Amount available \$
Credit card facility	183,770	(12,031)	171,739

29. SUBSEQUENT EVENTS

Significant events after balance date

The following significant events have occurred after balance date;

- The Company has renewed the lease agreement for it Fitzroy premises in Melbourne for a further period of 3 years from September 1, 2018 to August 31, 2021. The Company has also entered into a 2 year lease for new premises in Charlotte, North Carolina, commencing July 23, 2018 to July 31, 2020.
- A Framework Agreement with Blockchain Global Limited (“BCG”) was entered into on August 2, 2018. The Agreement formalizes the non-binding terms sheet that was entered into between the parties on February 2, 2018, which outlined a proposed strategic alliance with respect to the provision of a suite of blockchain opportunities to the Company, with the proposed issue of 486,000,000 shares to BCG in 3 tranches subject to the achievement of certain milestones.
- On August 8, 2018, the Company executed an Equity Placement Facility with Kentgrove Capital Pty Ltd. Under the Facility, Kentgrove Capital may provide the Company with up to A\$20 million of equity capital in a series of individual placements of up to \$1 million (or a higher amount by mutual agreement) over the next 20 months. Following the execution of the Facility and under a Prospectus as lodged with ASIC, the Company has issued:
 - 12,500,000 Options, exercisable at \$0.0153 each, expiring 3 years after issue (Establishment Options), to Kentgrove Capital Pty Ltd in its capacity as trustee of the Kentgrove Capital Growth Fund (Kentgrove) (Option Offer).
 - 8,833,100 Shares (Establishment Shares) to Kentgrove in lieu of payment of an Establishment Fee (Establishment Share Offer).

29. SUBSEQUENT EVENTS

Significant events after balance date (cont.)

- 100,000,000 Shares (Collateral Shares) to Kentgrove as security for the Company’s obligations under the equity placement facility with Kentgrove.

The issue of the establishment and collateral shares to Kentgrove has resulted in an increase of the issued share capital of the Company to 2,544,115,824.

Under the lodged Prospectus, the Company will also have the ability to offer and issue up to 441,655,004 Placement Shares either to Kentgrove under the Kentgrove Facility, or to other investors as determined by the Board, to raise up to \$5,000,000. Prospectus currently has a closing date of November 9 2018. Since June 30 2018, the Company has issued 100,000,000 shares under this facility, resulting in cash inflows from financing of \$1,350,000.

- Following the recommendation of the Remuneration Committee, and subsequent Board approval in July 2018, the Board has agreed to award the Directors’ of the Company Share Options pursuant to the Company’s Employee Share Option Plan. Subject to Shareholder approval, the quantum of the award, ranging in value from \$75k to \$150k will be aligned to the individual Directors responsibilities and activities. In addition, the Board has agreed to grant to Dr Kasian, in his role as interim CEO, 50 million Options subject to certain market related vesting conditions. The issue of such Options will be subject to all necessary Shareholder approvals being obtained.
- The company has executed an Agreement with Swisstec Health Analytics on July 30, 2018 which sets out the principal commercial terms on which the Company intends to appoint Swisstec as a non-exclusive distributor for hospitals in Asia and imposes binding obligations on the parties to negotiate in good faith in order to enter a formal distribution agreement. In accordance with the terms of this agreement, the Company has acquired a 5% equity stake in Swisstec, and has provided Swisstec with \$250k to facilitate their expansion into hospitals in the Asian region.
- The Company has signed a Heads of Agreement with Beijing Zishan Health Consultancy Limited. The Agreement provides a framework according to which the two parties will explore opportunities to achieve market entry, through a Joint Venture, for GTG’s genomic tests into the health sector in the People’s Republic of China.



Dated July 3, 2018

Renewal of Lease

60-66 Hanover Street, Fitzroy, Victoria

Crude Pty Ltd (ACN 124 327 920)

Genetic Technologies Limited (ACN 009 212 328)

© Holding Redlich 2018

18500360

Melbourne • Sydney • Brisbane

www.holdingredlich.com

This Renewal of Lease is dated 3rd July 2018

Parties:

Landlord

Crude Pty Ltd (ACN 124 327 920)
of c/- Focus Group Investments Pty Ltd, Level 5, 190 Queen Street, Melbourne, Victoria 3000

Tenant

Genetic Technologies Limited (ACN 009 212 328)
of 60-66 Hanover Street, Fitzroy, Victoria, 3065

Introduction:

- A** Under the terms of a lease dated October 7, 2015 (**Lease**) the Landlord leased to the Tenant the premises known as 60-66 Hanover Street, Fitzroy (**Premises**) for a term of 3 years commencing September 1, 2015. A copy of the Lease is in **Attachment 1**.
- B** The parties have agreed to renew the lease for a term of 3 years commencing September 1, 2018 (**Renewal Term**) on the terms and conditions contained in this Deed.

It is agreed:

1. Renewal

The Landlord grants and the Tenant accepts a new lease of the Premises for the Renewal Term (**Renewal Lease**) on the terms and conditions contained in the Lease subject to the variations effected by this Deed.

2. Variations to Lease

- 2.1** The Lease is varied for the purposes of the New Lease as set out in this clause 2.
- 2.2** The schedule to the Lease is deleted and replaced with the schedule to this Deed.

3. Agreement to observe terms of Lease

The Landlord and the Tenant agree to comply with the provisions of the Lease as if all the provisions are repeated in this Deed, subject to the variations referred to in this Deed.

4. Costs

Each party will bear their own costs of and incidental to the preparation and completion of this Deed.

5. Effect of Deed

In all other respects the Lease remains unchanged.

6. Goods and Services Tax

6.1 If GST is imposed or levied in respect of any supply by a party under or in accordance with this Deed, then the party making the supply may recover the GST Amount from the party receiving the supply in addition to the Consideration. The party making the supply must provide such invoices to the party receiving the supply as are required pursuant to the GST Legislation.

6.2 In the above sub-clause:

Consideration means any amount or consideration payable or to be provided pursuant to any provision of this Deed other than this clause;

GST means any form of goods and services tax or similar value added tax;

GST Amount means the Consideration (after deducting the GST Exempt Component) multiplied by the Rate;

GST Exempt Component means any part of the Consideration which solely relates to a supply that is free or exempt from the imposition of GST;

GST Legislation means any legislation or regulation which imposes, levies, implements or varies a GST;

Rate means the rate at which GST Legislation from time to time imposes or levies GST on the relevant supply; and

Supply includes supply as defined under GST Legislation.

Executed by the parties as a deed.

The **Common seal** of **Crude Pty Ltd** (ACN 124 327 920) is affixed in accordance with its constitution in the presence of:

[ILLEGIBLE]
Signature of sole Director

[ILLEGIBLE]
Name of sole Director

Executed by Genetic Technologies Limited (ACN 009 212 328) in accordance with section 127 of the Corporations Act:

[ILLEGIBLE]
Signature of Director

/s/ Paul Kasian
Name of Director

[ILLEGIBLE]
Signature of Secretary

/s/ Kevin Fischer
Name of Secretary

Schedule		
Item 1	(Tenant)	Genetic Technologies Limited (ACN 009 212 328) of 60-66 Hanover Street, Victoria, 3065
Item 2	(Guarantor)	Not applicable
Item 3	(Premises)	That part of the Complex being part of the area known as Ground Floor, 60-66 Hanover Street, Fitzroy, Victoria measuring approximately 645 square metres being the area shown hatched on the plans in Annexure A
Item 4	(Landlord’s installations)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Floor coverings — vinyl and carpet• Fire alarm systems• Security alarm systems• Fire extinguishers and hose reels• Remote electronic gate openers• Light fittings• 7 air conditioning units as marked on the plans in Annexure B of the Lease
Item 5	(Landlord’s works)	Not applicable
Item 6	(Tenant’s works)	Not applicable
Item 7	(Lease Start Date)	September 1, 2018
Item 8	(Duration of Lease)	3 years
Item 9	(Lease Expiry Date)	August 31, 2021
Item 10	(Rent)	Year 1: \$195,336.96 Year 2: \$202,173.75 Year 3: \$209,249.83
Item 11	(Security deposit)	Not applicable

Item 12	(Use of Premises)	Offices, commercial and research laboratories and any ancillary uses of the Tenant
Item 13	(Public Liability Insurance)	\$10 million
Item 14	(Last date to renew Lease)	Not applicable
Item 15	(Option term)	Nil
Item 16	(Base rent during Option term)	Not applicable
Item 17	(Car spaces and fee)	13 Car Spaces at an initial Parking fee of \$129.79 per space per month
Item 18	(Special conditions)	<div><div>1.</div><div>Despite clause 15.2, Genetic Technologies Limited (ACN 009 212 328) is the Tenant, the Landlord’s consent is not required to any fixed and floating charge over all of the Tenant’s assets.</div></div> <div><div>2.</div><div>The parties must meet no later than 30 days before the Expiry Date to attempt to agree (acting reasonably) the extent of the Tenant’s obligations under clause 20. If the parties fail to reach agreement, the provisions of clause 20 will prevail.</div></div> <div><div>3.</div><div>The Tenant acknowledges and agrees that the water meter for the premises will not be split between Levels 1 and 2. The Tenant agrees to cover the cost of all water consumption within the premises, covering Levels 1 and 2.</div></div>

Dated October 7, 2015

Lease

60-66 Hanover Street, Fitzroy

Crude Pty Ltd (ACN 124 327 920)

Genetic Technologies Limited (ACN 009 212 328)

Melbourne • Sydney • Brisbane

www.holdingtedlich.com

Table of contents

1.	Definitions	5
2.	Disclosure Statement	6
3.	Landlord’s works	6
4.	Tenant’s works	6
5.	Term	6
6.	Renewal	6
6.1	Option to renew this Lease	6
6.2	Changes to this Lease on renewal	7
6.3	If Tenant is in breach of this Lease	7
7.	Monthly tenancy	7
8.	Payments	7
8.1	What the Tenant must pay the Landlord	7
8.2	The Landlord may charge interest if payments are late	7
8.3	Adjustments	8
8.4	Goods and Services Tax	8
9.	The tenant must pay rent	8
10.	Market rent review	8
10.1	Notice of increased market rent	8
10.2	Disputes	8
10.3	Review procedure	8
10.4	New rent applies from the Market Review Date	9
10.5	Valuer’s decision	9
10.6	Valuing the current market rent	9
10.7	The Valuer’s costs	9
11.	Rent review	9
11.1	Formula for CPI rent increases	9
11.2	Changes made by the ABS	10
11.3	New rent applies from CPI Review Date	10
12.	Outgoings	10
12.1	The Tenant must pay the Tenant’s share of outgoings	10
12.2	Meaning of Outgoings	10
12.3	Items excluded from Outgoings	11
12.4	Meaning of costs	11
12.5	Landlord to estimate Tenant’s share of Outgoings	11
12.6	Landlord’s statement of Outgoings	11
12.7	Adjustment	11
13.	Other amounts payable by the tenant	12
13.1	Statutory Charges	12

13.2	Services to the Premises	12
13.3	Landlord’s legal and other costs	12
14.	Security deposit	12
15.	The Tenant’s obligations generally	12
15.1	The Tenant must obey the law	12
15.2	Using this Lease as security	12
15.3	Caveats	12
15.4	The Tenant’s behaviour	13
15.5	Danger or risk	13
15.6	The Tenant must obey fire regulations	13
15.7	The Tenant must pay for damage	13
15.8	Workplace health and safety	13
16.	Using the premises	13
17.	Assigning or dealing with the premises	14
17.1	Tenant must not assign without consent	14
17.2	When the Landlord will consent to an assignment	14
17.3	Change in control of the Tenant	14
18.	Maintaining the premises and the Tenant’s property	15
18.1	Tenant’s maintenance responsibilities	15
18.2	Structural repairs	15
19.	Altering the premises	15
20.	When this lease ends	15
21.	The Landlord’s rights and obligations	16
21.1	The Tenant’s quiet enjoyment	16
21.2	Roof and external walls	16
21.3	Landlord’s maintenance	16
21.4	The Landlord may enter the Premises	16
21.5	The Landlord may give the Tenant notice to do work	16
21.6	The Landlord may do things on the Tenant’s behalf	16
21.7	The Landlord may erect signs	16
21.8	Subdivision	17
22.	Landlord’s repairs or building work	17
22.1	The Landlord may do repairs	17
22.2	The Landlord may do building work	17
23.	If the premises are damaged or destroyed	17
23.1	Tenant may ask Landlord to rebuild	17
23.2	When Tenant or Landlord may end this Lease	17
23.3	Landlord is not liable to pay compensation	17
23.4	If insurer is not obliged to pay for reinstatement	18
24.	If premises are resumed	18
25.	risks and insurance	18
25.1	The Tenant must have insurance	18

26.	The Tenant releases and Indemnifies the Landlord	18
26.1	Tenant occupies the Premises at its own risk	18
26.2	Release	18
26.3	The Tenant Indemnifies the Landlord	18
27.	How the Tenant breaches this lease	19
28.	If the Tenant breaches this lease	20
28.1	What the Landlord may do if the Tenant is in breach	20
28.2	Breach of an essential term	20
28.3	If the Tenant vacates the Premises before the Expiry Date	20
29.	Guarantee and Indemnity by the guarantor	20
30.	Notices	20
30.1	Notices to be writing	20
30.2	Serving Notices	20
31.	Landlord’s consent and approval	21
32.	Special Conditions	21
33.	General	21
33.1	Individual and joint liability	21
33.2	Waiver	21
33.3	Warranties by the parties	21
33.4	Victorian law applies	22
33.5	Severability	22
34.	Interpretation	22
35.	Time for doing acts	22
36.	Car Parking Licence	22
36.1	Definitions	22
36.2	Licence	23
36.3	Holding Over	23
36.4	Use of the Car Spaces	23
36.5	Assignment and Sub-Licensing	23
36.6	Landlord’s right of entry	23
36.7	Risk	24
36.8	Release	24
36.9	Indemnity	24
36.10	Security cards	24
36.11	End of licence	24
36.12	Parking Fee	24
36.13	Parking levy	25
37.	Demolition	25
37.1	Landlord may terminate for demolition	25
37.2	Notice of termination	25
	Execution Page	26

This Lease is dated October 7, 2015

Parties:

Crude Pty Ltd (ACN 006 042 995) of Suite 1 Mezzanine Level, 550 Lonsdale Street, Melbourne in its capacity as trustee of the Trust (Landlord which, where relevant, includes the Landlord’s servants and agents and any person authorised by the Landlord)

The person described in Item 1 (Tenant which, where relevant includes the Tenant’s employees, agents or any person the Tenant allows on the Premises)

Introduction:

A The Landlord leases the Premises to the Tenant on the terms and conditions set out in this Lease.

It is agreed:

1. Definitions

In this Lease unless the context clearly indicates otherwise:

Authority means any government or governmental, semi-governmental, local, administrative or statutory body, department, commission, authority, tribunal or other similar entity;

Car Park means the car park on the land;

Common Areas means the areas of the Complex the Landlord provides for common use and includes the accessways, entrances, stairs, elevators, toilets and the Car Park;

Complex means the property known as 60-66 Hanover Street, Fitzroy in which the Premises are located, and includes the land and all improvements on the Land;

Expiry Date means the date specified in Item 9;

financial year means 1 July to 30 June;

Item means an Item in the schedule;

Land means the land described in certificates of title volume 4169 folio 613, volume 4330 folio 930, volume 9235 folio 918, volume 9829 folio 140, volume 8077 folio 965 and volume 5346 folio 043;

Landlord means the Landlord and any other person who will be entitled to possession of the Premises when this Lease ends;

Landlord’s Installations means the equipment, fixtures and fittings set out in item 4 and any other property installed by the Landlord in the Premises;

law means any act, regulation, by-law, ordinance or rules made by any Parliament;

Lease means this Lease and the schedule;

Mechanical Services means all air conditioning, heating or ventilation equipment and fire protection equipment or systems in the Premises;

Outgoings is defined in clauses 12.2 and 12.3;

Premises means that part of the Complex described In item 3 and includes the Landlord’s installations;

schedule means the schedule forming part of this Lease;

Start Date means the date specified in item 7;

Statutory Charges means all rates, taxes and other duties of every description which are separately assessed, metered or levied by any Authority in respect of the Premises including land tax calculated on the basis that the Complex is the only property owned by the Landlord;

Tenant’s Property means all property owned or leased by the Tenant which is inside the Premises Including all fixtures, fittings, signs, equipment and goods;

Tenant’s share, unless otherwise stated, means the proportion that the floor area of the Premises bears to the lettable area of the Complex;

Trust means the Victoria Street Unit Trust; and

Valuer means a valuer having not less than 5 years experience in valuing premises similar to the Premises.

2. Disclosure Statement

Intentionally deleted.

3. Landlord’s works

Intentionally deleted.

4. Tenant’s works

Intentionally deleted.

5. Term

- (a) This Lease starts on the date stated in Item 7. It runs for the term set out in Item 8 ending at midnight on the Expiry Date stated in Item 9.

6. Renewal

6.1 Option to renew this Lease

If the Tenant tells the Landlord by notice before the date set out In Item 14 that the Tenant wishes to renew this Lease the Landlord must grant the Tenant a new lease for the option period set out in Item 15 (but see clause 6.3). The new lease must;

- (a) commence on the day after the Expiry Date;
- (b) be at the rent set out in item 16; and
- (c) otherwise be on the same terms and conditions as this Lease except for those changes that can be made by virtue of clause 6.2.

6.2 Changes to this Lease on renewal

The Landlord:

- (a) will delete this clause from the new lease if the new lease is for the final option period set out in item 15; or
- (b) will delete the first option period specified in item 15 from the new lease if there is more than one option period specified in that item; and
- (c) may vary the new lease to accommodate any change that needs to be made because of any law dealing with or affecting retail tenancies or the rights and interests of landlords and tenants under retail tenancy leases.

6.3 If Tenant is in breach of this Lease

The Landlord does not have to grant the Tenant the new lease if:

- (a) at the time the Tenant gives the Landlord the notice the Tenant has not remedied any breach under this Lease (see clause 27) about which the Landlord has given the Tenant notice; or
- (b) the Tenant has persistently breached this Lease and the Landlord has given the Tenant notice of the breaches.

7. Monthly tenancy

If the Tenant occupies the Premises after the Expiry Date with the Landlord's consent it will do so as a monthly tenant at a rent increased by CPI using the formula set out in clause 11 and otherwise on the same terms as at the Expiry Date of this Lease. The Landlord or the Tenant may end the monthly tenancy on any day by giving at least one month's notice to the other party.

8. Payments

8.1 What the Tenant must pay the Landlord

The Tenant must pay the Landlord the rent, its share of the Outgoings, Statutory Charges and any other money the Tenant must pay the Landlord under this Lease on time and in full without deduction or set-off.

8.2 The Landlord may charge interest if payments are late

- (a) If the Tenant is late in paying rent or any other money to the Landlord, the Landlord may charge interest on that money at a rate equal to 2% above the rate that applies under section 2 of the Penalty Interest Rates Act 1983.
- (b) The Landlord will calculate the interest on any unpaid money from the day the unpaid money was due until the day it and all interest accrued on it is paid in full.

8.3 Adjustments

If money payable by the Tenant is calculated using a time period and this Lease starts or ends during that time period, the amount payable must be calculated proportionately and the Landlord must make any necessary proportional adjustment.

8.4 Goods and Services Tax

If a goods and services tax or similar value added tax (**GST**) is at any time levied or imposed on or in respect of any supply by the Landlord to the Tenant made under or in accordance with this Lease (including but not only the leasing of the Premises), the amount payable for that supply under this Lease will be increased by the amount of the GST so levied or imposed and the Tenant must pay that amount upon provision of a valid tax invoice.

9. The tenant must pay rent

The Tenant must pay the rent set out in item 10 to the Landlord in equal monthly instalments in advance and on or before the first day of each month.

10. Market rent review

10.1 Notice of increased market rent

- (a) If item 10 or item 16 says that the rent for any year is to be the market rent for the Premises, the Landlord must give the Tenant notice of what the Landlord says is the current market rent for the Premises as at the first day of that year (**Market Review Date**). The Landlord must give the Tenant this notice not later than 12 months after the Market Review Date.
- (b) Until the Landlord gives the Landlord’s notice under clause 10.1, the Tenant must pay the old rent and any adjustment will be calculated from the Market Review Date.

10.2 Disputes

If the Tenant disputes the rent notified by the Landlord under clause 10.1, the procedure in clause 10.3 must be followed. Each time limit is consecutive. Each time limit in clause 10.3 is of the essence. This means that if a time limit is not kept, the right attached is lost.

10.3 Review procedure

- (a) If the Tenant disputes the rent notified by the Landlord under clause 10.1, the Tenant must give the Landlord notice of that dispute by not later than 28 days after the Landlord gives the Landlord’s notice.
- (b) The Tenant and the Landlord must negotiate in good faith to try to agree on a new rent within 14 days or if a new base rent is not agreed, on the appointment of a Valuer to decide the new rent.
- (c) If the Tenant and the Landlord do not agree on the new rent or on the appointment of a Valuer within the time set out in clause10.3(b), either the Tenant or the Landlord may ask the President of the Australian Property Institute Inc — Victorian Division (or the president nominee) to appoint a Valuer to decide the new rent. The Valuer must decide the new rent based on the current market rent.

10.4 New rent applies from the Market Review Date

The Tenant must pay the new rent from the Market Review Date. Until any dispute is resolved or a right is lost, the Tenant must pay the old rent. Any adjustment will be calculated from the Market Review Date and made when the Tenant’s next monthly payment is due.

10.5 Valuer’s decision

The Valuer will act as an independent expert and not as an arbitrator. He or she must:

- (a) give his or her decision in writing;
- (b) give detailed reasons for his or her decision; and
- (c) specify the matters to which he or she had regard in making the decision.

10.6 Valuing the current market rent

In the valuation the current market rent is to be taken as the rent obtainable at the time of the review in a free and open market, between a willing landlord and a willing tenant in an arm’s length transaction, having regard to these matters:

- (a) the provisions of this Lease;
- (b) the rent that would reasonably be expected to be paid for the Premises if they were unoccupied and offered for lease for the same, or a substantially similar, use to that set out in item 12;
- (c) the Landlord’s outgoings to the extent to which the Tenant is liable to contribute to those outgoings.
- (d) rent concessions and other benefits offered to prospective tenants of unoccupied premises,

but the current market rent is not to take account of the value of goodwill created by the Tenant’s occupation or the value of the Tenant’s fixtures and fittings.

10.7 The Valuer’s costs

The Tenant and the Landlord must share the Valuer’s costs equally.

11. Rent review

11.1 Formula for CPI rent increases

If item 10 or item 16 says the rent for any year is to be increased by CPI the rent will be increased on and as at the first day of that year (CPI Review Date) to a new rent calculated using the formula:

$$NMR = CMR \times \frac{A}{B}$$

where:

- NMR is the new rent
- CMR is the rent payable immediately before the CPS Review Date;

- A** is the level of the CPI at the end of the calendar quarter immediately preceding the CPI Review Date;
- B** is the level of the CPI at the end of the calendar quarter-immediately preceding the date which is 12 months before the CPI Review Date; and
- CPI** is the Consumer Price Index Melbourne, All Groups as published quarterly by the Australian Bureau of Statistics (ABS).

11.2 Changes made by the ABS

- (a) If the ABS updates the base year of the CPI a conversion will be made to preserve the intended continuity of calculation by using the appropriate arithmetical factor determined by the ABS.
- (b) If the ABS stops publishing the CPI the Landlord and the Tenant will agree to replace the CPI with any other index which is published to replace the CPI.
- (c) If the Landlord and the Tenant cannot agree on a replacement index, the Landlord may ask the person who is then president of the Australian Property Institute inc — Victorian Division (or the president’s nominee) (**President**) to select an index which appropriately reflects increases in the cost of living in Melbourne. The President will make the selection as an expert and not as an arbitrator and the selection will be final and binding on the Landlord and the Tenant who must share the President’s costs equally.

11.3 New rent applies from CPI Review Date

The Tenant must pay the new rent from the CPI Review Date. If the new rent is not calculated until after the CPI Review Date the Tenant must pay the old rent until the new rent is calculated. Any adjustment will be calculated from the CPI Review Date and made when the Tenant’s next monthly payment is due.

12. Outgoings

12.1 The Tenant must pay the Tenant’s share of outgoings

- (a) The Tenant must pay the Tenant’s share of the Outgoings for the Complex. If an Outgoing is only referable to some of the premises in the Complex, including the Premises, then the Tenant’s share of that outgoing will be the proportion that the lettable area of the Premises bears to the total of lettable areas of the premises in the Complex which receive the benefit of the outgoing.

12.2 Meaning of Outgoings

- (a) Outgoings means all costs the Landlord incurs in relation to the ownership, occupation, use conduct, management and maintenance of the Complex, including;
- (b) rates or assessments or other fees payable to an Authority (for example council rates, water rates, electricity, gas, sewerage);
- (c) taxes including the Landlord’s land tax and excluding income tax and capital gains tax;
- (d) premiums for insurance against all risks concerning the Complex or the Landlord’s employees and contractors including insurance against loss of rent and consequential loss;

- (e) costs the Landlord incurs in the maintenance of and repairs to the Complex;
- (f) costs of operating, repairing and servicing the Mechanical Services;
- (g) costs relating to cleaning, pest control, liquid removal, waste removal and fire prevention for the Complex;
- (h) costs the Landlord incurs in maintaining the security and control of the Complex;
- (i) costs relating to the provision of water, gas, electricity, telephone, power and other services to the Complex; and
- (j) costs of gardening, landscaping and installing, maintaining and cleaning signage and decorative features at the Complex.

12.3 Items excluded from outgoings

Outgoings does not include:

- (a) any costs due solely to any other tenant's use of its premises;
- (b) expenditure on capital account or of a capital nature;
- (c) any costs the Landlord recovers from the Tenant under clause 13.1 or 13.2; or
- (d) any costs which the Landlord is not permitted by law to recover from the Tenant.

12.4 Meaning of costs

The term costs when used in clauses 12.2 and 12.3 means all costs, expenses, fees, payments, wages, rates, taxes and other charges whether incurred directly or indirectly or through the engagement of independent contractors.

12.5 Landlord to estimate Tenant's share of Outgoings

- (a) On or before each 30 June the Landlord may give the Tenant the Landlord's estimate of the Tenant's share of the Outgoings for the next financial year.
- (b) The Tenant must if requested by the Landlord, pay the Landlord the estimated share of the Outgoings in equal monthly instalments, in advance and on or before the first day of each month.

12.6 Landlord's statement of Outgoings

- (a) On or before each 30 September the Landlord must give the Tenant a written statement that details:
 - (i) all the Landlord's expenditure on account of the Outgoings to which the Tenant is liable to contribute for the previous financial year; and
 - (ii) the Tenant's share of these,

accompanied by a report prepared by a registered company auditor.

12.7 Adjustment

If the Tenant pays its estimated share of the Outgoings in equal monthly instalments under clause 12.5(b) and the Outgoings are greater than the estimated Outgoings paid, the Tenant must pay

the Landlord any difference with the Tenant's next monthly payment. If it is less, the Landlord must refund the Tenant the difference.

13. Other amounts payable by the tenant

13.1 Statutory Charges

The Tenant must pay the Landlord all Statutory Charges for the Premises not later than 7 days after the Landlord gives the Tenant a notice asking for any of them. If any Statutory Charge is not separately assessed on or in respect of the Premises, the Tenant must pay the Tenant's share of that Statutory Charge.

13.2 Services to the Premises

The Tenant must pay on time for all services (including electricity, gas, oil, water and telephone services) supplied separately to the Premises.

13.3 Landlord's legal and other costs

The Tenant must pay:

- (a) the Landlord's reasonable legal and other costs incurred in any dealing under clause 17 (for example: assignment or subletting);
- (b) any stamp duty on this Lease or any other document arising under this Lease;
- (c) the Landlord's reasonable costs of considering any request made by the Tenant for the Landlord's approval or consent; and
- (d) the Landlord's costs incurred if the Tenant is in breach of this Lease.

14. Security deposit

Intentionally omitted.

15. The Tenant's obligations generally

15.1 The Tenant must obey the law

- (a) The Tenant must obey all laws relating to, and the directions of any Authority that requires the Tenant to do, anything concerning the Premises, the Tenant's use of the Premises or this Lease.
- (b) The Tenant must give the Landlord copies of any notices or written directions given by any Authority concerning the Premises, the Tenant's use of the Premises or this Lease.

15.2 Using this Lease as security

The Tenant must not use this Lease as security. The Tenant must get the Landlord's consent before the Tenant uses the Tenant's Property as security.

15.3 Caveats

The Tenant must not lodge a caveat against the title to the Land.

15.4 The Tenant's behaviour

The Tenant must not do any thing that is or may be dangerous, annoying or offensive to, or that does or may interfere with, adjacent occupiers.

15.5 Danger or risk

The Tenant must promptly tell the Landlord about any accident to or problem with any of the Mechanical Services or other services, facilities or equipment in the Premises that needs repair, especially if the Tenant is aware, or ought reasonably to be aware, that this may be a danger or risk to the Complex or any person in the Complex.

15.6 The Tenant must obey fire regulations

The Tenant must not store or use inflammable or explosive substances on the Premises, except as required in the normal course of the Tenant's business.

15.7 The Tenant must pay for damage

The Tenant must pay for the cost of repairing any damage the Tenant causes to the Complex.

15.8 Workplace health and safety

Without limiting any other provision of this lease, the Tenant must comply at all times with all laws applicable to workplace health and safety. The Tenant must ensure that its employees, agents and contractors (and the contractor's employees agents and contractors) and persons under its control also comply with those laws.

16. Using the premises

- (a) The Tenant may only use the Premises for the purposes set out in item 12.
- (b) The Tenant must operate its business at the Premises in accordance with best practice for a business of that nature.
- (c) The Tenant must obtain and keep current all licences, consents or permits required for operating its business.
- (d) The security of the Premises is the Tenant's responsibility. The Tenant must keep the Premises safe and secure and protect them against theft.
- (e) The Tenant must get the Landlord's consent before the Tenant erects any signs or advertisements on or about the Premises.
- (f) If the Tenant plays music or uses any audio or audio-visual equipment (including television and computer equipment) in the Premises, the Tenant must make sure that the music or noise from that equipment cannot be heard outside the Premises.
- (g) The Tenant must not have any electronic games, vending machines or similar equipment in the Premises.
- (h) The Tenant must get the Landlord's consent before the Tenant uses any services or equipment for cooling, heating, lighting or circulating air in the Premises other than those the Landlord supplies. However this clause does not apply to heating equipment, fans and fume cupboards which are reasonably necessary for the Tenant's business.

- (i) The Tenant must store and keep all waste and rubbish in proper receptacles and make sure the rubbish is removed regularly.
- (j) The Tenant must, at the Tenant's expense, keep the Premises free from animals, rodents and pests.
- (k) The Tenant must only use electrical, plumbing or other facilities (for example toilets, sinks, basins or drains) in the Premises for their proper purpose. The Tenant must not deposit any rubbish or foreign material in any of the facilities.
- (l) The Tenant must not burn any rubbish or any other material on the Complex.
- (m) The Tenant must not conduct any auction, liquidation or fire sale on the Premises.

17. Assigning or dealing with the premises

17.1 Tenant must not assign without consent

The Tenant must not assign, sub-lease, share, mortgage or otherwise deal with this Lease or the Premises without the Landlord's prior consent (which will not be unreasonably withheld).

17.2 When the Landlord will consent to an assignment

The Landlord will consent to an assignment of this Lease if the Tenant is not in breach of this Lease and if the Tenant does all of the following:

- (a) asks in writing for the Landlord's consent;
- (b) gives the Landlord any information the Landlord reasonably requires about the financial resources and business experience of the person who wishes to be assigned this Lease (**new person**);
- (c) otherwise proves to the Landlord that the person who wishes to be assigned this Lease is respectable and responsible and has the financial resources or business experience necessary to meet the obligations under this Lease;
- (d) delivers to the Landlord any personal guarantees, security deposit or any other security the Landlord reasonably requires;
- (e) signs and has the new Tenant sign a document recording the assignment in a form approved by the Landlord's lawyers, and which records that the Tenant is not released from the Tenant's obligations under this Lease; and
- (f) pays the Landlord's reasonable costs of making enquiries about the new person as well as the Landlord's legal fees incurred on the assignment.

17.3 Change in control of the Tenant

If the Tenant is a corporation (other than a corporation whose shares are listed on any Stock Exchange in Australia) and the Tenant intends to take any action which has or will have the effect that the legal or beneficial ownership or control of more than 50% of the Tenant's shareholding changes, the Tenant must seek the Landlord's consent to the change before taking that action as if that change is an assignment of this Lease.

18. Maintaining the premises and the Tenant's property

18.1 Tenant's maintenance responsibilities

At the Tenant's cost the Tenant must:

- (a) keep the Premises clean and tidy;
- (b) keep the Premises in good condition, except for fair wear and tear and carry out all repairs to the Premises and fix any damage to the Premises;
- (c) maintain, repair and keep the Tenant's property in good condition; and
- (d) keep the gardens and lawns of the Premises (if any) tidy and attractive.

18.2 Structural repairs

The Tenant is not required to carry out structural repairs or repairs of a capital nature unless the need for them arises from:

- (a) the Tenant's negligence;
- (b) the Tenant's failure to obey this Lease; or
- (c) the Tenant's use of the Premises.

19. Altering the premises

- (a) The Tenant must get the Landlord's consent before the Tenant alters, installs any equipment in, re-designs the interior of, paints or does any other work in or to the Premises (**Tenant's Works**).
- (b) Before the Tenant starts the Tenant's Works it must submit plans and specifications for that work to the Landlord for the Landlord's approval.
- (c) When the Landlord gives that approval and before the Tenant starts the works, the Tenant must get the approval of all relevant Authorities to the fitout plans approved by the Landlord and deliver evidence of that approval to the Landlord.
- (d) The Tenant must carry out the Tenant's Works as shown on the plans approved by the Landlord and the relevant Authorities.
- (e) The Tenant must reimburse the Landlord for any costs incurred by the Landlord in considering the plans including any reasonable fees charged by the Landlord's architects or consultants. The Tenant must make that reimbursement when requested by the Landlord

20. When this lease ends

When this Lease ends:

- (a) the Tenant must vacate the Premises and give them back to the Landlord in the same condition as they were in at the starting date, except for fair wear and tear;
- (b) the Tenant must make sure all the Tenant's property is removed and must fix any damage caused by the removal; and

(c) anything left at the Premises will become the Landlord's property and the Landlord may keep it or dispose of it.

The Tenant must pay the Landlord one day's rent for each day that there is anything left on the Premises after this Lease ends until the Landlord is able to dispose of all that property.

21. The Landlord's rights and obligations

21.1 The Tenant's quiet enjoyment

If the Tenant does not breach this Lease, the Landlord must allow the Tenant to occupy and use the Premises without the Landlord interrupting or disturbing the Tenant, except where this Lease allows the Landlord to do so.

21.2 Roof and external walls

The Landlord has the sole right to use the roof and external walls of the Complex.

21.3 Landlord's maintenance

The Landlord must maintain the structure of the Premises and the Landlord's installations in the Premises in a condition consistent with the condition they were in on the date the Tenant first occupied the Premises unless the need for the repair arises out of the Tenant's misuse.

21.4 The Landlord may enter the Premises

- (a) The Landlord may enter the Premises for inspection or to carry out maintenance, repairs or other building work and at any reasonable time after giving the Tenant reasonable notice. If there is an emergency, the Landlord may enter at any time without giving the Tenant notice.
- (b) The Landlord may enter the Premises at any time to show them to prospective purchasers or tenants during business hours after giving the Tenant reasonable notice.

21.5 The Landlord may give the Tenant notice to do work

The Landlord may give the Tenant notice which requires the Tenant to do any work to the Premises which is the Tenant's responsibility under this Lease, within a reasonable time.

21.6 The Landlord may do things on the Tenant's behalf

The Landlord may carry out any of the Tenant's obligations on the Tenant's behalf if the Tenant does not carry it out on time (for example: if the Tenant does not do repairs). The Tenant must promptly reimburse the Landlord's costs of doing this.

21.7 The Landlord may erect signs

The Landlord may erect any of the following:

- (a) signs advertising the Premises for lease during the 3 months before this Lease ends; and
- (b) signs advertising the Premises for sale at any time,

but in doing so the Landlord must not interfere with the Tenant's business.

21.8 Subdivision

- (a) The Landlord may at any time subdivide the Complex and may sell any lot of the subdivided Complex. If the Landlord asks, the Tenant will sign a consent to the subdivision prepared by the Landlord. The Landlord must pay the Tenant’s reasonable costs of doing so.
- (b) The Landlord will ensure that there is no interference to the Tenant’s business caused by the subdivision.
- (c) The Tenant must not object to or obstruct any subdivision, sale or consolidation of the Complex.
- (d) The Tenant must obey any body corporate rules which apply to the Complex after the subdivision as if those rules were part of this Lease, but the Tenant will not have to pay any additional costs or body corporate fees which It would not otherwise have to pay under this Lease.
- (e) The Landlord must not subdivide that part of the Premises described in Item 3(a) if that subdivision would result in that part of the Premises being owned by more than one party.

22. Landlord’s repairs or building work

22.1 The Landlord may do repairs

The Landlord may do any repairs or maintenance to the Complex.

22.2 The Landlord may do building work

The Landlord may do any building work to extend or change the Complex or any part of it (excluding the Premises) but if the Landlord does the Landlord must cause as little disruption as the Landlord reasonably can to the Tenant’s use of the Premises

23. If the premises are damaged or destroyed

23.1 Tenant may ask Landlord to rebuild

If the Premises are damaged or destroyed and as a result the Tenant cannot use or have access to the Premises the Tenant may ask the Landlord to re-build them. Meanwhile the Tenant must continue to use any part of the Premises that is useable, safe and accessible.

23.2 When Tenant or Landlord may end this Lease

If the Landlord does not re-build the Premises within a reasonable time after the Tenant asks or if the Landlord decides not to re-build them, the Tenant or the Landlord may end this Lease by giving not less than 7 days’ notice to the other.

23.3 Landlord is not liable to pay compensation

The Landlord will not be liable to pay the Tenant compensation but the Landlord must reduce the Tenant’s rent and any other money payable by the Tenant under this Lease by a reasonable amount, depending on the type and extent of the damage or destruction, from the date on which the damage or destruction occurs until the Premises are again fit for use and accessible or this Lease is ended.

23.4 If insurer is not obliged to pay for reinstatement

The Tenant cannot end this Lease and must continue to pay rent and all other money payable by the Tenant under this Lease-up to the Expiry Date if the Landlord’s insurer is not legally required to pay to reinstate the Premises because of anything done or not done by the Tenant.

24. If premises are resumed

If an Authority resumes the Premises or any part and this makes the Premises unfit for the Tenant’s use, the Landlord or the Tenant may end this Lease by notice to the other. The Landlord will not be liable to pay the Tenant any compensation in these circumstances.

25. Risks and insurance

25.1 The Tenant must have insurance

- (a) The Tenant must have throughout the period of this Lease current insurance for all of the following:
 - (i) public liability insurance policy for the amount in item 13;
 - (ii) insurance covering the Tenant’s property for its full value; and
 - (iii) plate glass insurance for its replacement value.
- (b) The Tenant must take out the Tenant’s insurance with an insurer approved by the Landlord.
- (c) The Landlord’s interest must be noted on each insurance policy.
- (d) The Tenant must give the Landlord evidence of the insurance before the start of this Lease and at the start of each financial year.
- (e) The Tenant must not do anything that may make the Landlord’s insurance invalid or able to be cancelled or that may increase the Landlord’s insurance premium. If the Landlord’s insurance premium does increase and the Landlord accepts that increase, the Tenant must pay the amount of the increase.

26. The Tenant releases and indemnifies the Landlord

26.1 Tenant occupies the Premises at its own risk

The Tenant occupies and uses the Premises at the Tenant’s own risk The Tenant will also carry out any building work in the Premises at the Tenant’s own risk.

26.2 Release

The Tenant releases the Landlord from any action or demand due to any damage, destruction, loss, injury or death occurring in the Premises or the Complex except to the extent that the Landlord causes this by the Landlord’s negligence.

26.3 The Tenant indemnifies the Landlord

The Tenant indemnifies the Landlord against any action or demand due to any damage, loss, destruction, injury or death caused by:

- (a) the Tenant's wilful act or negligence;
 - (b) the Tenant's use or occupation of the Premises; or
 - (c) the use by the Tenant of services to the Premises,
- except to the extent that the Landlord caused this by the Landlord's negligence.

27. How the Tenant breaches this lease

The Tenant will be in breach of this Lease if:

- (a) the Tenant does not pay the Landlord any part of the rent on time and whether or not the Landlord has asked the Tenant to pay that rent; or
- (b) the Tenant does not pay the Landlord on time any other money which the Tenant must pay to the Landlord under this Lease and does not make that payment within 14 days after the Landlord gives the Tenant a notice requiring that payment; or
- (c) the Tenant disobeys any other term of this Lease and the Tenant does not remedy that breach within 14 days after the Landlord gives the Tenant a notice specifying that breach and asking the Tenant to remedy it; or
- (d) if the Tenant is a natural person and proceedings are commenced for either the Tenant's voluntary or compulsory bankruptcy;
- (e) if the Guarantor is a natural person and:
 - (i) becomes a bankrupt;
 - (ii) proceedings are commenced for the Guarantor's voluntary or compulsory-bankruptcy; or
 - (iii) enters into or tries to enter into any scheme of arrangement or other compromise with the Guarantor's creditors;
- (f) if the Tenant or a Guarantor is a corporation and:
 - (i) proceedings are commenced for either the voluntary or compulsory winding-up of the Tenant or the Guarantor;
 - (ii) an order is made for the appointment of a provisional liquidator to the Tenant or the Guarantor;
 - (iii) a controller within the meaning of Section 9 of the Corporations Act is appointed over any property or business of the Tenant or the Guarantor;
 - (iv) a resolution is passed that the Tenant or the Guarantor be wound up; or
 - (v) an administrator is appointed under Part 5.3A of the Corporations Act to the Tenant or the Guarantor or the directors of the Tenant or the Guarantor pass a resolution to appoint an administrator; or
 - (vi) the Tenant or the Guarantor enters into or tries to enter into any scheme of arrangement or other compromise with the Tenant's or the Guarantor's creditors.

28. If the Tenant breaches this lease

28.1 What the Landlord may do if the Tenant is in breach

If the Tenant is in breach of this Lease and does not remedy the breach as required, the Landlord may do any one or more of the following:

- (a) re-enter and take possession of the Premises;
- (b) end this Lease (see clause 20);
- (c) recover from the Tenant any loss or damage the Landlord suffers due to the Tenant’s breach;
- (d) use the security deposit (see clause 14) to recover any loss or damage the Landlord suffers due to the Tenant’s breach; or
- (e) exercise any of the Landlord’s other legal rights.

28.2 Breach of an essential term

If the Tenant breaches an essential term of this Lease and the Landlord re-enters and takes possession of the Premises or ends this Lease, the Landlord may recover all money payable by the Tenant under this Lease up to the expiry date. The essential terms are clauses 9,12, 13,14 (if applicable), 16,17,18,19 and 25.1.

28.3 If the Tenant vacates the Premises before the Expiry Date

If the Tenant vacates the Premises before the Expiry Date, whether or not it ceases to pay rent, the Landlord may:

- (a) accept the keys for the Premises; or
- (b) enter the Premises to inspect or repair them or to show them to prospective tenants; or
- (c) advertise the Premises for re-letting

without this being re-entry or waiver of the Landlord’s rights to recover the rent or other money under this Lease. This Lease continues until a new tenant takes possession of the Premises, unless the Landlord accepts a surrender of or ends this Lease.

29. Guarantee and indemnity by the guarantor

Intentionally deleted

30. Notices

30.1 Notices to be writing

A notice, request, consent, approval, demand or statement (**notice**) required by this Lease must be in writing.

30.2 Serving Notices

- (a) The Landlord may serve a notice on the Tenant by:

- (i) giving it to the Tenant personally;
 - (ii) leaving it at the Premises; or
 - (iii) leaving it at, posting it to or faxing it to the Tenant's address set out in this Lease or to the Tenant's registered office or the Tenant's business address as last known to the Landlord.
- (b) The Landlord may serve a notice on the Guarantor by:
- (i) giving it to the Guarantor personally; or
 - (ii) leaving it at, posting it to or faxing it to the Guarantor's address set out in this Lease.
- (c) The Tenant may serve a notice on the Landlord by leaving it at, posting it to or faxing it to:
- (i) the Landlord's address set out in this Lease; or
 - (ii) any other address that the Landlord nominates.

31. Landlord's consent and approval

Unless this Lease says otherwise, if the Tenant asks for the Landlord's consent or approval for something, the Landlord must act promptly but the Landlord may give or withhold its consent or approval at the Landlord's choice. The Landlord may also require the Tenant to obey any terms before the Landlord gives, or as a condition of, the Landlord's consent or approval.

32. Special Conditions

The special conditions set out in item 18 bind the Tenant and the Landlord. If any special condition is inconsistent with a term of this Lease, the special condition will prevail.

33. General

33.1 Individual and joint liability

If two or more people are described in item 1 or item 2, each person described in the item is liable for all of the obligations under this Lease of the persons named in that item both individually and together with each other person described in that item.

33.2 Waiver

A waiver by the Landlord will only be enforceable against the Landlord if the waiver is in writing and signed by the Landlord.

33.3 Warranties by the parties

This Lease and the disclosure statement contain the whole agreement of the parties. Neither party is entitled to rely on any warranty or statement in relation to:

- (a) the conditions on which this Lease has been agreed;
- (b) the provisions of this Lease; or
- (c) the Premises

which is not contained in those documents.

33.4 Victorian law applies

This Lease is governed by Victorian law.

33.5 Severability

If any term of this Lease is made void or unenforceable, the remaining terms will not be affected.

34. Interpretation

In this Lease:

- (a) an obligation not to do something includes the obligation not to allow or permit that thing to be done;
- (b) unless it is clearly not the intention, an obligation is an obligation for the entire term of this Lease;
- (c) a word or expression in the singular includes the plural and the plural includes the singular;
- (d) a reference to a person includes an individual, a corporation and any other organisation having a legal entity;
- (e) examples are descriptive only and not exhaustive;
- (f) headings are inserted for convenience only and are not to be used to interpret this Lease;
- (g) a reference to a clause is a reference to a clause in this Lease;
- (h) a reference to any thing (including any place or money) includes a reference to a part of that thing; and
- (i) the expression at any time means at any time and from time to time.

35. Time for doing acts

If the date by which or the period in which anything must be done under this Lease ends on a Sunday or a public holiday in Melbourne, the date or period will be extended to the next day that is not a Sunday or a public holiday.

36. Car Parking Licence

36.1 Definitions

In this clause 36:

Car Spaces means the number of car spaces set out in **Item 17** in the location as designated by the Landlord from time to time by notice in writing to the Tenant.

Parking Fee means the monthly amount set out in **Item 17** as varied under this Lease.

36.2 Licence

- (a) Subject to the provisions of this clause 36 the Landlord grants to the Tenant a non-exclusive licence to use the Car Spaces from September 1, 2015 until the earlier of the Expiry Date and August 31, 2018.
- (b) The Landlord may restrict access to the Car Park:
 - (i) if required by any Authority; or
 - (ii) due to any cause which in the reasonable opinion of the Landlord endangers or may endanger the Car Spaces, the Complex or any person or property in the Complex.

36.3 Holding Over

If the Tenant continues to occupy the Premises under clause 7 this licence continues until the Tenant’s occupation of the Premises ends.

36.4 Use of the Car Spaces

The Tenant:

- (a) must not use the Car Spaces other than to park one car in each Car Space;
- (b) must not bring any vehicle into the Complex or onto the Land which is unsafe or which drips oil or fluid;
- (c) must comply with any law relating to the Tenant’s use of the Car Spaces except where such a law requires the Tenant to carry out structural works or alterations to the Car Spaces or the Complex;
- (d) must not clean, grease, oil, service or wash cars in the Car Park or otherwise use the Car Park in a way which would cause damage, nuisance or disturbance to occupants of the Complex or an adjoining property;
- (e) must, if requested by the Landlord, promptly give to the Landlord details (including registration numbers) of the cars the Tenant will park in the Car Spaces from time to time.

36.5 Assignment and Sub-Licensing

The Tenant may:

- (a) assign this licence to a person to whom the Tenant assigns the Lease; or
- (b) sub-licence the Car Spaces to a person to whom the Tenant has sub-let the Premises

if that assignment of the Lease or sub-lease of the Premises has been approved by the Landlord.

36.6 Landlord’s right of entry

The Landlord may enter the Car Spaces at reasonable time after giving the Tenant reasonable notice or, in the case of emergencies, without notice to:

- (a) install, maintain, repair, alter or inspect the Car Park or the services in or to the Car Park;
- (b) carry out repairs, renovations, maintenance or alterations to the Car Spaces which are reasonably necessary;

- (c) stop any actual or potential damage to the Complex occurring in or about the Car Spaces; and
- (d) comply with any laws or the requirements of any relevant Authority that are not the Tenant's responsibility to comply with.

In exercising the Landlord's rights under this clause 36, the Landlord must cause as little inconvenience to the Tenant as is practicable in the circumstances.

36.7 Risk

The Tenant uses the Car Park and the Car Spaces at the Tenant's own risk.

36.8 Release

- (a) The Landlord is not responsible and has no liability to the Tenant for any claim by the Tenant against the Landlord as a consequence of the use of the Car Park or Car Spaces by the Tenant except to the extent that that claim arises because of the Landlord's default or negligence.
- (b) Without limiting the release in clause 36.8(a) the Landlord will not be responsible for:
 - (i) the theft of any cars the parts, equipment or contents of any cars while the cars are on the Land; or
 - (ii) damage whether malicious or accidental that any cars may sustain while entering or leaving the Complex or within the Complex.

36.9 Indemnity

The Tenant indemnifies and will keep indemnified the Landlord from and against all claims made against the Landlord as a consequence of the use of the Car Park or Car Spaces by the Tenant except to the extent that that claim arises because of the Landlord's default or negligence.

36.10 Security cards

The Landlord may restrict access to the Car Park by means of security cards.

36.11 End of licence

- (a) When this licence ends the Tenant must:
 - (i) remove the cars from the Car Park and make good any damage caused or contributed to by the Tenant; and
 - (ii) leave the Car Spaces in a neat and tidy state, clean and free of rubbish.
- (b) The Landlord may remove and store at the Tenant's Cost the cars not removed by the Tenant in accordance with clause 36.11(a).

36.12 Parking Fee

- (a) The Tenant must pay to the Landlord the Parking Fee:
 - (i) by equal monthly instalments in advance; and
 - (ii) at the same time and in the same manner as the Rent.
- (b) The Parking Fee will be reviewed at the same time and in the same manner as the Rent.

36.13 Parking levy

- (a) Any levy, rate, charge or assessment imposed by any Authority in respect of a Car Space is not included in the Parking Fee.
- (b) In addition to the Parking Fee, the Tenant must pay any levy rate, charge or assessment in respect of each Car Space upon demand by the Landlord.

37. Demolition

37.1 Landlord may terminate for demolition

If the Landlord wishes to carry out building work to extend, improve or change the premises or the Complex the landlord may terminate this Lease.

37.2 Notice of termination

- (a) The Landlord must give the Tenant at least 9 months’ notice of the termination under clause 37.1 (**termination notice**), but cannot give a termination notice before January 31, 2018.
- (b) The termination notice must state the date (termination date) by which the Tenant needs to leave the premises and this Lease will end and the Tenant must leave the premises on the termination date.

Execution page

Executed as an deed

The **Common Seal of Crude Pty Ltd** (ACN 124 327 920) is affixed in accordance with its constitution in the presence of:



[ILLEGIBLE]
Signature of Director

[ILLEGIBLE]
Name of Director

Executed by **Genetic Technologies Limited** (ACN 009 212 328) in accordance with section 127 of the Corporations Act:

[ILLEGIBLE]
Signature of Director

[ILLEGIBLE]
Signature of Secretary

[ILLEGIBLE]
Name of Director

/s/ Brian Manuel
Name of Secretary

Reference Schedule		
Item 1	(Tenant)	Genetic Technologies Limited (ACN 009 212-328) of 60-66 Hanover Street, Fitzroy, Victoria, 3065
Item 2	(Guarantor)	Not applicable
Item 3	(Premises)	That part of the Complex being part of the area known as Ground Floor, 60-66 Hanover Street, Fitzroy Victoria measuring approximately 645 square metres being the area shown hatched on the plans in Annexure A.
Item 4	(Landlord’s installations)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Floor coverings — vinyl and carpet• Fire alarm systems• Security alarm systems• Fire extinguishers and hose reels• Remote electronic gate openers• Light fittings• 7 air conditioning units as marked on the plans in Annexure B
Item 5	(Landlord’s Works)	Not applicable
Item 6	(Tenant’s works)	Not applicable
Item 7	(Lease Start Date)	September 1, 2015
Item 8	(Duration of Lease)	3 years
Item 9	(Lease Expiry Date)	August 31, 2018
Item 10	(Rent)	Year 1; \$180,600.00 Year 2: \$187,824.00 Year 3; \$195,336.96
Item 11	(Security Deposit)	Not applicable
Item 12	(Use of Premises)	Offices, Commercial and Research Laboratories and any ancillary uses of the Tenant
Item 13	(Public Liability Insurance)	\$10 million

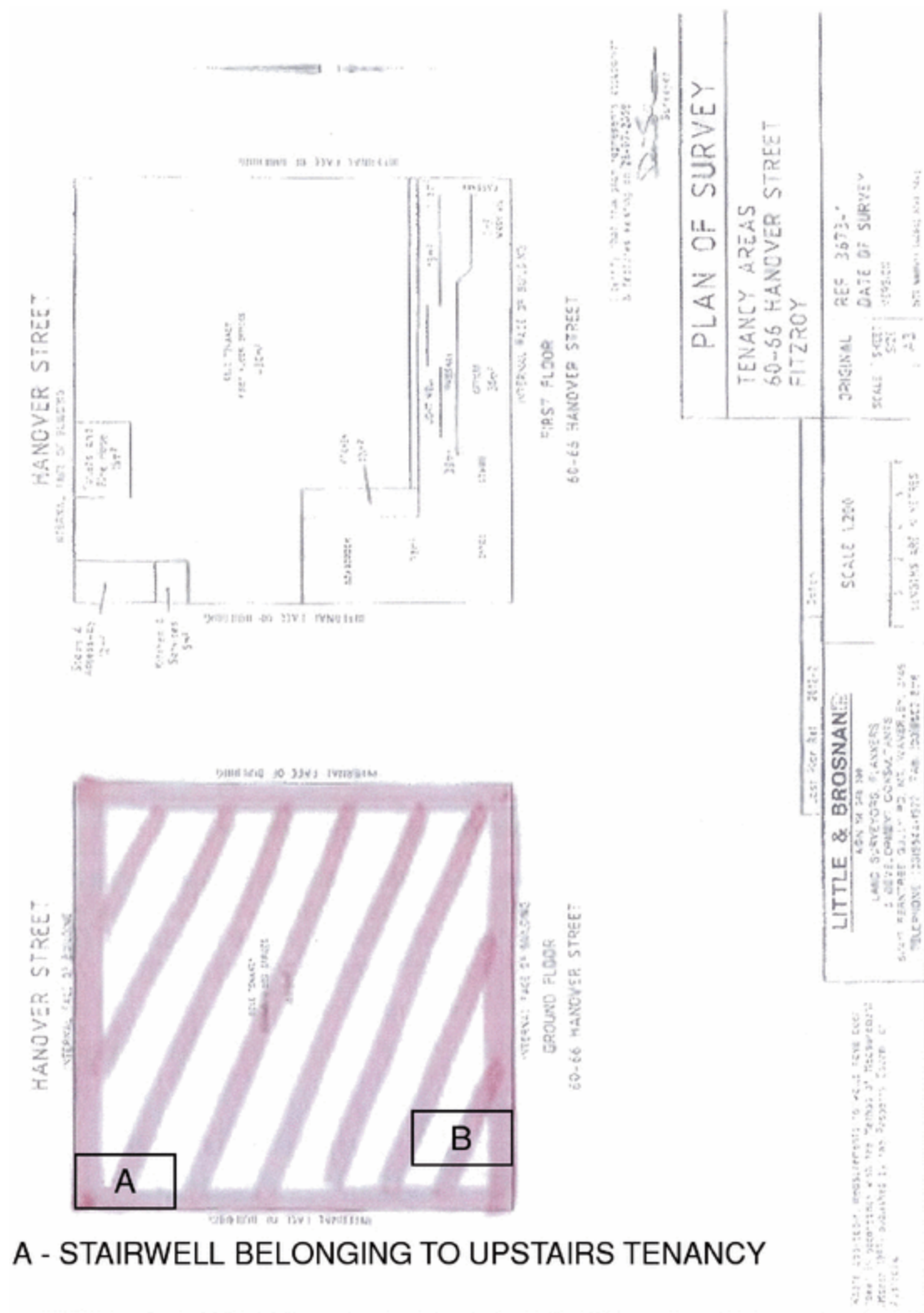
Item 14	(Last date to renew Lease)	Not applicable
Item 15	(Option term)	Nil
Item 16	(Rent during option term)	Not applicable
Item 17	(Car spaces and fee)	13 Car Spaces at an initial Parking Fee of \$120 per space per month
Item 18	(Special conditions)	<div><div>1. Despite clause 15.2, while Genetic Technologies Limited (ACN 009 212 328) is the Tenant, the Landlord’s consent is not required to any fixed and floating charge over all of the Tenant’s assets.</div><div>2. Before the Lease Start Date, the Tenant must at its own cost carry out and complete in a proper and workmanlike manner and to the Landlord’s satisfaction, the following works to separate the Premises from the premises previously occupied by the Tenant:<div><div>(a) install plaster wall near the entrance and a door near the rear of the Premises in accordance with the plan attached in Annexure B; and</div><div>(b) all works required by the Landlord and necessary to separate the air conditioning equipment, electricity and water services to ensure the premises on the first floor of the Building and the Premises run independently of each other, including installation of separate electricity meters for the Premises and first floor, and installation of separate check meters in respect of water and gas usage to determine the usage between the floors.</div></div></div><div>3. The parties must meet no later than 30 days before the Expiry Date to attempt to agree (acting reasonably) the extent of the Tenant’s obligations under clause 20. If the parties fail to reach agreement, the provisions of clause 20 will prevail.</div><div>4. The tenant acknowledges and agrees that the water meter for the premises will not be split between levels 1 and 2. The tenant agrees to cover the cost of all water consumption within the premises, covering levels 1 and 2.</div></div>

[ILLEGIBLE]

[ILLEGIBLE]

[ILLEGIBLE]

Annexure A — Plan showing Premises



B - COMMON AREA as per ANNEXURE B

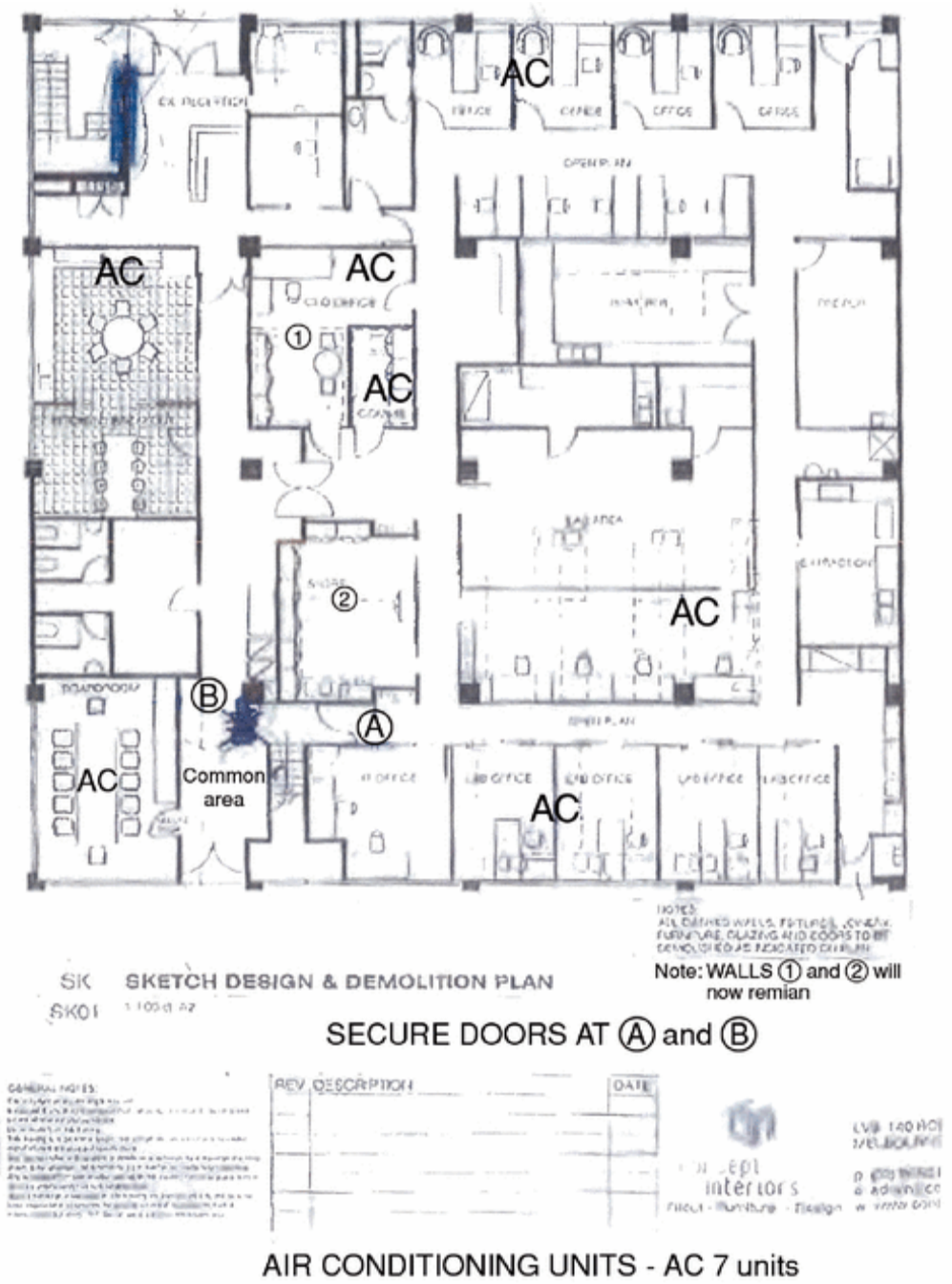
[ILLEGIBLE]

[ILLEGIBLE]

[ILLEGIBLE]

Annexure B — Plan for Tenant’s works

Annexure B — Plan for Tenant’s works



STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA

COUNTY OF MECKLENBURG

LEASE

THIS LEASE, made and entered into this the 28th day of June, 2018 (the “Effective Date), by and between MIDTOWN AREA PARTNERS, LLC, a North Carolina limited liability company, hereinafter referred to as “Landlord” and Phenogen Sciences, Inc. a Delaware corporation hereinafter referred to as “Tenant”;

WITNESSETH:

In consideration of the mutual agreements of the parties herein, including the rental agreed to be paid by Tenant to Landlord, Landlord leases to Tenant, and Tenant leases from Landlord the following described premises upon the following terms and conditions:

ARTICLE I
BASIC LEASE TERMS

Section 1.1. Building, Premises, Term, Base Rent, Allowances, and Security Deposit.

Building and Address:	1300 Baxter Street Charlotte, NC 28204
Location of Premises:	Suite 157 on the first floor of the Building.
Rentable Area of Premises:	approximately 620 square feet
<u>Lease Term:</u>	
Commencement Date:	July 23, 2018
Termination Date:	July 31, 2020
<u>Base Rent:</u>	
Annual Base Rent	\$16,740.00
Monthly Base Rent	\$1,395.00
<u>Security Deposit:</u>	\$1,395.00

Section 1.2. Address of Landlord and Tenant; Notices.

Rental and Other Payments To:	Midtown Area Partners, LLC 1300 Baxter Street, Suite 370 Charlotte, NC 28204
Correspondence To:	Midtown Area Partners, LLC 1300 Baxter Street, Suite 370 Charlotte, NC 28204 Attention: Royden L. Goode II
Address of Tenant:	Phenogen Sciences, Inc. 1300 Baxter Street Suite 157 Charlotte, NC 28204

All monies due and notices required under this Lease shall be sent to the respective addresses of Landlord and Tenant set forth above, as applicable, and unless otherwise provided, shall be in writing. Notice shall be deemed served (a) if sent by certified mail, return receipt requested, when the return receipt is signed or refused, (b) if sent by recognized national overnight courier, next day delivery, as of the next business day after delivery to such courier, or (c) if in any other manner, upon actual delivery to the party to whom/ which such notice is addressed. Either party may change the address to which money due or notices shall be sent by giving the other party written notice of such change of address.

Section 1.3. Size of Premises. The rentable area of the Premises shall be deemed to be correct, unless re-measurement of the Premises is performed by Landlord. If applicable, the rentable area of the Premises set forth in Section 1.1. shall be adjusted accordingly and Annual and Monthly Base Rent, as applicable, and Security Deposit and any other terms or conditions of this Lease based on the rentable area of the Premises shall also be adjusted accordingly and thereafter, the rentable square footage based on the final rentable area shall be deemed to be correct for all purposes of this Lease.

ARTICLE II LEASED PREMISES

Section 2.1. Description of Premises. The premises (the “Premises”) described in Section 1.1. are located within the building (the “Building”) also described in Section 1.1., which is located on the real property described in **Exhibit A** attached hereto and incorporated herein by reference (said land and the Building and other improvements thereon being herein called the “Property”), and are shown on the floor plan attached hereto as **Exhibit B** and incorporated herein by reference.

Section 2.2. Tenant’s Acceptance of Property. Prior to delivering the Premises to Tenant, Landlord shall complete the work (“Landlord’s Work”) described on **Exhibit C** attached hereto and incorporated herein by reference and using building standard materials and quantities. Landlord shall deliver possession of the Premises to Tenant on the date that Landlord’s Work is substantially completed (the “Substantial Completion Date”), and Tenant shall accept possession on that date. The Premises shall be deemed substantially completed on the date that (i) Landlord obtains a certificate of occupancy for the Premises, if the Landlord’s Work required the issuance of a permit, or (ii) the date Landlord certifies to Tenant in writing that it has completed the Landlord’s Work in accordance with **Exhibit C** attached hereto, if a permit is not required for the completion of the Landlord’s Work. Landlord shall use commercially reasonable efforts to deliver the Premises to Tenant on or before fourteen (14) days after the Effective Date but Landlord’s failure to comply with said deadline shall not provide Tenant with any rights or remedies against Landlord hereunder. Except for Landlord’s Work, Landlord shall have no obligation with respect to the upfitting of the Premises. Except for Landlord’s completion of the Landlord’s Work as provided in **Exhibit C** attached hereto, Tenant shall accept the Premises in its “as is” condition, and Landlord shall have no obligation to upfit the same and the taking of possession of the Premises by Tenant shall be conclusive evidence that the Premises, Building and Property were in satisfactory condition at the time possession was taken. If Landlord is required to do any work in the Premises, then Tenant must notify Landlord within thirty (30) days of the taking of possession of the Premises of any incomplete “punch list” items required to be completed by Landlord, and any items not contained in such notice shall be deemed fulfilled. Landlord and Tenant shall enter into a letter agreement after Landlord delivers the Premises to Tenant to evidence the Substantial Completion Date.

Section 2.3. Common Areas. Tenant, its employees, agents, and invitees shall have the right, in common with others and subject to the exclusive control and management thereof at all times by Landlord, to the nonexclusive use of such of the areas as are from time to time designated by Landlord as the common areas (the “Common Areas”) of the Property, which shall include to the extent provided, any parking areas, sidewalks, roadways, loading platforms, restrooms, ramps, maintenance and mechanical areas, lobbies, corridors, elevators, stairwells and landscaped areas, and subject to such restrictions on the use thereof as Landlord may reasonably require.

Section 2.4. Quiet Enjoyment. Tenant, upon performing its obligations hereunder, shall hold and enjoy the Premises for the term aforesaid, subject, however, to the terms of this Lease.

**ARTICLE III
LEASE TERM**

Section 3.1. Term. The term of this Lease (the “Term”) shall commence and end on the Commencement Date and Termination Date, respectively, set forth in Section 1.1., provided, however, if due to causes beyond Landlord’s reasonable control, including without limitation, the inability of Landlord, despite due diligence, to complete any work that it is obligated to perform in the Premises or to obtain possession of the Premises because of a holdover tenant therein, Landlord is unable to deliver the Premises to Tenant by the Commencement Date, then in such case the Commencement Date shall be deferred until Landlord is able to deliver the Premises to Tenant, and the Termination Date shall be deferred by the same number of days of such deferral, provided further, however, if Landlord’s delay is due to the acts, delays or omissions of Tenant, then notwithstanding said deferral, Tenant shall begin paying rent on the originally scheduled Commencement Date and continue doing so through the deferred Termination Date. Tenant shall have no right to enter the Premises prior to the Commencement Date, except only as expressly permitted by Landlord; provided that such entry shall not interfere with any work being done by or on behalf of Landlord therein, and Tenant shall indemnify Landlord and hold Landlord harmless against any claim, loss or liability arising from such entry, including without limitation, any claim, loss or liability for bodily injury, including death, and/or property damage.

Section 3.2. Holding Over. If Tenant continues to occupy the Premises after the last day of the Term, or any extension thereof, and if Landlord elects to accept rent, a monthly tenancy terminable at will by either party on not less than seven (7) days notice shall be created which shall be on the same conditions as those herein specified, except that Tenant shall pay 150% of the monthly rent paid for the last full month of the Term, or extension thereof, as applicable, for each month or partial month during which Tenant retains possession of the Premises after such expiration or termination date, and Tenant shall indemnify Landlord against all liabilities and damages sustained by Landlord by reason of such retention of possession, provided, however, that the provisions of this section shall not constitute a waiver by Landlord of any reentry rights available under this Lease or in law or equity. Upon establishment of the Market Rental Rate for the beginning of an Extended Term, the Monthly Base Rent shall increase by three percent (3%) each year on the anniversary of such beginning date.

**ARTICLE IV
BASE RENT AND ADJUSTMENTS**

Section 4.1. Base Rent. The Tenant agrees to pay to Landlord on the first day of each month, in advance, without setoff or demand, during the term of this Lease, the Initial Monthly Base Rent set forth in Section 1.1., subject to annual increases as provided in Section 4.2. below, with the first Monthly Base Rent payment and the security deposit being due upon Lease execution; provided, however, that if the term of this Lease does not begin on the first day or end on the last day of a calendar month, the Monthly Base Rent for that partial month at the beginning and/or end of the Term, as applicable, shall be prorated and paid in advance.

Section 4.2. Annual Increase of Base Rent. Annual and Monthly Base Rent shall increase on the first day of the month during which each anniversary of the Commencement Date occurs during the Term, or any renewal thereof, by three percent (3.0%) of the Annual and Monthly Base Rent in effect on the day immediately prior thereto. Refer to **Exhibit D** for an illustration of how the increases provided under this Section are computed.

Section 4.3. Late Payment. If Monthly Base Rent or any other payment due hereunder from Tenant to Landlord remains unpaid five (5) days after said payment is due, the amount of such unpaid rent or other payment shall be increased by a late charge equal to five percent (5%) of the amount of the delinquent rent or other payment, the parties hereto agreeing that such late charge shall not be deemed to be a penalty, it being understood between the parties that late payments by Tenant shall result in additional expense to Landlord which is difficult and impractical to ascertain and that such late charge is a reasonable estimate of

the loss and expense to be suffered by Landlord as a result of such late payment. In addition, past due Monthly Base Rent and any other sum due hereunder that is past due shall bear interest at the rate of fifteen percent (15%) per annum (or if less, the highest rate permitted by law) beginning on the thirty-first (31st) day after said Monthly Base Rent or other payment is due until the past due monetary obligation is paid. If rent or any other sum due Landlord by Tenant hereunder is collected by or through an attorney at law, Tenant agrees to pay Landlord's reasonable attorneys' fees incurred with respect thereto. Nothing herein, however, shall relieve Tenant of the obligation to pay rent or any other payment on or before the date on which any such payment is due, nor in any way limit Landlord's remedies under this Lease or at law or in equity in the event said rent or other payment is unpaid after it is due. If Tenant fails to pay the late payment charge, or attorneys' fees or interest due hereunder, Landlord shall have the same remedies as are provided to Landlord hereunder for Tenant's failure to pay Monthly Base Rent.

Section 4.4. Application of Payments Received from Tenant. Landlord, acting in its sole discretion, shall have the right to apply any payments made by Tenant to the satisfaction of any debt or obligation of Tenant to Landlord under this Lease regardless of the instructions of Tenant as to application of any sum, whether endorsed upon Tenant's check or otherwise, and the acceptance by Landlord of a check or checks drawn by anyone other than Tenant shall in no way affect Tenant's liability hereunder nor be deemed an approval of any assignment of this Lease by Tenant.

Section 4.5. Security Deposit. Tenant shall deposit with Landlord upon execution and delivery of this Lease by Tenant to Landlord, the security deposit set forth in Section 1.1., to be held as collateral security for the payment of rentals and other sums of money owed by Tenant to Landlord hereunder, and for the performance by Tenant of its obligations hereunder. If during the Term any such rental or other payment become overdue and unpaid, then Landlord may, at its option, appropriate and apply any portion of said deposit to the payment of any such overdue rent or other payment, or, if Tenant fails to perform any of its other obligations hereunder, then Landlord, at its sole option, may appropriate and apply said entire deposit, or so much thereof as may be necessary, to make such payment or compensate Landlord for the loss or damage sustained by Landlord as a result of Tenant's default. Should any portion of the deposit, be appropriated and applied as provided above, then, upon the written demand of Landlord, Tenant shall forthwith remit to Landlord a sufficient amount in cash to restore said security deposit to the original sum deposited, and Tenant's failure to do so within ten (10) days after receipt of such demand shall constitute a breach of this Lease. The Security Deposit shall be returned to Tenant at the end of the term of this Lease provided Tenant shall have made all such payments and performed all such covenants and agreements. Landlord's obligation with respect to the security deposit are those of a debtor and not a trustee, and any interest earned on said security deposit shall be the property of Landlord.

**ARTICLE V
UTILITIES, SERVICES AND MAINTENANCE**

Section 5.1. Landlord's Services and Maintenance. Landlord shall provide at its expense the following services in a manner reasonably consistent with the standard of other suburban office buildings comparable to the Building in the area within which the Building is located:

- (i) Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning (HVAC) for the Premises during business hours, as hereinafter defined, to maintain temperatures for normal office use and occupancy;
- (ii) Automatic passenger elevator(s) providing service to the floor on which the Premises are located;
- (iii) Janitorial services to the Premises for normal office use;
- (iv) Hot and cold water sufficient for drinking, lavatory, toilet, and ordinary cleaning purposes to be drawn from approved fixtures in the Building;
- (v) Electricity to the Premises during business hours in reasonable amounts necessary for normal office use, lighting, and HVAC;

- (vi) Replacement of Building Standard lighting tubes, lamp ballasts, and bulbs for 2 x 2 or 2 x 4 fluorescent fixtures only;
- (vii) Window washing in the Premises, inside and outside, at reasonable intervals;
- (viii) Extermination and pest control when necessary; and
- (ix) Maintenance of the Common Areas.

Section 5.2. Business Hours. In Section 5.1., business hours means:

- (i) Monday through Friday, 8:00 a.m. through 6:00 p.m., and
- (ii) Saturday, 8:00 a.m. through 1:00 p.m., but excludes the following holidays or the days on which the holidays are designated for observance: New Year's Day, Memorial Day, July Fourth, Labor Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day, and any other recognized national holiday generally observed by other suburban office buildings in the area of, and comparable to, the Building.

Section 5.3. Twenty-Four Hour Access. Tenant and Tenant's employees, agents, and subtenants shall have access to the Premises and the Parking Areas twenty-four (24) hours per day, seven (7) days per week, subject to Landlord's reasonable security requirements for after-business-hours-access. Such requirements may include, but not be limited to, the exhibition of suitable identification and/or use of a particular entrance and/or exit with an access card, combination lock, or other security device. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Landlord shall have the right to close the Building and deny access to any person otherwise entitled thereto in the event of an emergency or other situation which threatens a danger to persons or property.

Section 5.4. Extra Services. Whenever Landlord knows that Tenant is using extra services because of either non-business-hours use or high electricity installations, or if Tenant uses any Landlord-provided services in excess of that required for normal and customary office use, Tenant shall pay to Landlord the reasonable cost of such extra use within thirty (30) days of receipt of an invoice for the same from Landlord. HVAC required by Tenant during non-business hours shall be supplied upon reasonable advance verbal notice to, and the reasonable approval of, Landlord, and Tenant shall pay the cost incurred by Landlord in providing such non-business hours HVAC. Tenant shall not place or operate in the Premises any electrically operated equipment or other machinery, other than typewriters, personal computers, adding machines, reproduction machines, and other machinery and equipment normally used in offices, unless Tenant receives Landlord's advance written consent. Landlord shall not unreasonably withhold or delay its consent, but Landlord may require payment for the extra use of electricity caused by operating this equipment or machinery. Landlord is not obligated to provide any services other than those listed in Section 5.1. above, but at Tenant's request, such other services may be provided by Landlord, in Landlord's sole discretion, provided the cost of such services is paid by Tenant. Tenant's failure to pay the charges required by this Section within thirty (30) days after receiving an invoice for the same shall entitle Landlord to the same remedies it has upon Tenant's failure to pay Base Rent, or any other charges due under the Lease, and the right to terminate any such services.

Section 5.5. Interruption of Services. Landlord does not warrant that any services Landlord supplies will not be interrupted, including without limitation interruptions due to accidents, storms, Acts of God, repairs, alterations, improvements, labor troubles, or any other reason beyond the reasonable control of Landlord, and any interruption shall not: (i) be considered an eviction or disturbance of Tenant's use and possession of the Premises; (ii) make Landlord liable to Tenant for damages; (iii) abate Base Rent, or any other charge under this Lease; or (iv) relieve Tenant from performing Tenant's Lease obligations.

Section 5.6. Tenant's Services and Maintenance. Tenant shall make arrangements directly with the telephone and data services company(ies) serving the Building for all telephone and data service required by Tenant in the Premises and shall pay for all telephone and data service used or consumed in the Premises. Further, Tenant shall be responsible for the maintenance, repair or replacement of any systems which are located within the Premises and are supplemental or special to the Building's standard systems,

whether installed pursuant to a work letter or otherwise, and for any lamps, whether fluorescent or incandescent, for any special or non-Building standard lighting fixtures, for floor and wall coverings in the Premises, and for all other services, maintenance and repairs not specifically delegated to Landlord hereunder which are required to keep the interior of the Premises in good condition and repair or are required by Tenant to conduct business in the Premises, provided, however, Tenant must obtain Landlord’s prior written consent before obtaining or contracting for any service not specifically provided for in this Lease. If heat generating machines or equipment are used in the Premises by Tenant which affect the temperature otherwise maintained by the Building heating and air conditioning system, Landlord shall have the right to install supplemental air conditioning units in or for the Premises and the cost of the units, and the cost of installation, operation and maintenance thereof, shall be paid by Tenant to Landlord within thirty (30) days of demand by Landlord.

ARTICLE VI
ALTERATIONS, REPAIRS AND MAINTENANCE

Section 6.1. Alterations. Tenant shall make no alterations, additions or improvements (collectively “Improvements”) to the Premises, whether before or during the Term, without the prior written consent of Landlord, and all such Improvements, including without limitation, subdividing partitions, walls and railings of whatever type, material or height, shall, when made, become the property of Landlord and remain upon and be surrendered with the Premises as a part thereof at the end of the Term, unless at the end of the Term, with regard to Improvements made to the Premises during the Term, Landlord shall notify Tenant to remove same, in which latter event Tenant shall do so. Tenant shall not core drill or in any other manner attempt to penetrate or penetrate the floors of the Building without the prior consent of Landlord, which Landlord may withhold in its sole discretion. All Improvements shall be constructed in a diligent, good and workmanlike manner, using at a minimum finishes which are standard to the Building (“Building Standard”) according to plans and specifications and using only contractors and subcontractors approved by Landlord in advance, and in compliance with all applicable legal requirements, including without limitation, the procurement of a building permit. At Landlord’s request, Tenant shall obtain a Builders’ Risk Insurance Policy covering the Improvements in such amount as is reasonably requested by Landlord, naming Landlord as an additional insured and providing that it will not be canceled without giving Landlord at least 15 days prior written notice thereof, and upon completion of such Improvements, Tenant shall furnish Landlord with a complete set of as-built plans and specifications for the same. Tenant has no authority to allow, will not permit, and will indemnify Landlord and hold it harmless from, any contractors’, laborers’, mechanics’, or materialmen’s liens, or any other similar liens filed against the Premises in connection with any Improvements. Also, with respect to any alterations, additions or improvements to the Premises made by Tenant, if Tenant requests, or if Landlord requires, the involvement of or work by Landlord’s construction coordinator, Tenant shall pay to Landlord the reasonable cost thereof, to be paid within ten (10) days of receipt of invoice for the same.

Section 6.2. Right of Entry. Landlord shall have the right to enter and grant licenses to enter the Premises at any time upon reasonable advance verbal notice (except in emergencies and normal and customary janitorial and maintenance services when no notice is required) (i) to examine the Premises, (ii) to make alterations and repairs to the Premises or to the Building (including the right, during the progress of such alterations or repairs, to store within the Premises necessary materials, tools and equipment), and (iii) to exhibit the Premises to prospective purchasers or tenants, and that no such entry shall render the Landlord liable to any claim or cause of action for loss of or damage to the property of the Tenant by reason thereof, nor in any manner affect the agreements in this Lease.

Section 6.3. Tenant’s Care of Premises. Tenant shall (i) keep the Premises and fixtures therein in good order and repair, including without limitation, maintenance, repair and replacement, if necessary, or doors (exterior and interior), interior plate glass and interior window glass, and wall and floor coverings, effecting all such maintenance, repairs and replacements at its own expense, employing materials and labor of a kind and quality equal to the original installations; (ii) make repairs and replacements to the Premises or Building needed because of Tenant’s misuse or negligence, except to the extent that the repairs or replacements are covered by Landlord’s insurance or the insurance Landlord is required to carry under Section 8.1., whichever is greater; (iii) repair and replace special equipment or decorative treatments above Building Standard installed by or at Tenant’s request and that serve the Premises only, except to the extent the repairs or replacements are needed because of Landlord’s misuse or negligence, and are not covered by

Tenant's insurance or the insurance Tenant is required to carry under Sections 8.2. and 8.6., whichever is greater, and (iv) not commit waste. If Tenant fails to maintain, repair or replace such equipment or other installations in or about the Premises as above provided within a reasonable time after written request from Landlord to do so, then Landlord may, but is not required to, accomplish the required work and Tenant shall pay the cost thereof to Landlord within ten (10) days of receipt of invoice for the same.

Section 6.4. Refrigerators, Water Fountains, Water Coolers, Icemakers, and other Water Using Equipment. Before placing any water using equipment, including without limitation, refrigerator, water fountain, fish tank, water cooler or icemaker in the Premises, Tenant must obtain Landlord's prior written consent, which Landlord may withhold in Landlord's sole discretion. Further, notwithstanding any other provisions of this Lease, including without limitation, Section 8.7. of this Lease, in the event Tenant places in the Premises any such water using equipment, or if any such water using equipment is placed or installed in the Premises as a part of the original upfit of the Premises, or if any such water using equipment is present within or a part of the Premises when Tenant takes possession of the Premises or at any other time during which this Lease is in force, whether or not Landlord has consented to the same, such water using equipment including, without limitation, refrigerator, water fountain, fish tank, water cooler or icemaker, and any such water using equipment leaks for any reason and/or causes any water damage to the Building or Property, or any part thereof, including, without limitation, walls, floors, ceilings, or any coverings thereof, or any other property of Landlord or of any other tenant, then in such case, Tenant shall be responsible for and shall pay and reimburse Landlord and such other tenant for the cost of the repair or replacement of any such part of the Building or Property or other property of Landlord or such other tenant, whether covered by Landlord's or such other tenant's insurance or not, and the waiver of claims and subrogation in Section 8.7. shall not apply to such damage. As provided above, Landlord's consent to the said water using equipment being in the Premises shall not release Tenant from its liability under this Section.

Section 6.5. Landlord's Repairs. Subject to Tenant's obligations in Section 6.3. and 6.4. above, Landlord shall maintain the structural portions of the Building and the Common Areas in a condition reasonably consistent with other suburban office buildings comparable to the Building in the area in which the Building is located, including the roof, foundation, exterior walls, interior structural walls, structural components, mechanical, electrical, HVAC, and plumbing system, parking areas, and sidewalks, except as otherwise provided in this Lease.

Section 6.6. Time for Repairs. Repairs or replacements required under Sections 6.3., 6.4. and 6.5. shall be made within a reasonable time (depending on the nature of the repair or replacement needed) after receiving notice of the need for a repair or replacement.

Section 6.7. Surrendering the Premises. Tenant shall schedule its move date, in writing, with Landlord in advance of the Termination Date or the date the last extension term, if any, ends, whichever is later and surrender the Premises to Landlord in the same broom clean condition that the Premises were in on the Commencement Date except for: (i) ordinary wear and tear; (ii) damage by the elements, fire, and other casualty unless Tenant would be required to repair under Sections 6.3. or 6.4; (iii) condemnation; and (iv) permitted Improvements unless Landlord requires their removal under Section 6.1. On surrender, Tenant shall remove from the Premises its personal property, trade fixtures, any Improvements required to be removed under Section 6.1., and at Landlord's request, any communications or computer wiring placed in the Premises or other parts of the Building by Tenant, and repair any damage to the Premises or Building caused by such removal. Any items not removed by Tenant as required above shall be considered abandoned. Landlord may dispose of abandoned items as Landlord chooses and bill Tenant for the cost of their removal and disposal, minus any revenues received by Landlord for their disposal.

ARTICLE VII USE AND COVENANTS

Section 7.1. Use and Occupancy. Tenant shall use the Premises for general office purposes only, and shall make no unlawful use of the Premises, and shall not place or affix any sign, name, legend, notice or advertisement of any kind on any part of the Building or Property without the prior written approval of Landlord, which Landlord may withhold in its sole discretion.

Section 7.2. Signage. Landlord, at Landlord’s cost, shall place Tenant’s name on a line in the first floor lobby directory, and at Tenant’s entry door to the Premises in a manner prescribed by Landlord.

Section 7.3. Parking. Tenant, and its employees, agents and invitees shall be required by Tenant to comply with the Parking Rules and Regulations attached hereto as **Exhibit E** together with all modifications thereto which Landlord may hereafter make, and to use the parking areas (the “Parking Areas”), provided by Landlord for the Building, only in a manner which is compatible with the day-to-day general use of the Building and Property by other tenants in the Building, the Landlord, the employees, agents, visitors, and invitees of the same, and others entitled to the use thereof. Landlord shall have the right to tow vehicles of Tenant and Tenant’s employees, agents, visitors and invitees that are parked in violation of the Parking Rules and Regulations. Upon Landlord’s request, Tenant will provide Landlord with the license tag numbers of all its employees and agents using the Premises or Building. Landlord reserves the right from time to time without notice to Tenant to (i) change the location or configuration of the Parking Areas, including the right to construct additional buildings and other improvements on the Parking Areas; (ii) change the number of parking spaces located within the Parking Areas; (iii) install systems to control and monitor parking in the Parking Areas, including without limitation, a parking gate and identification card system; (iv) utilize parking guards or attendants to supervise and control parking within the Parking Areas; (v) make repairs, alterations, and improvements to the Parking Areas; (vi) modify the parking rules; and (vii) enforce the parking rules by appropriate legal action, including without limitation, towing of vehicles parked in violation of the Parking Rules.

Section 7.4. Building Rules and Regulations. Tenant shall obey and require its employees, agents and invitees to obey the Building Rules and Regulations attached hereto as **Exhibit F** and to such further rules and regulations as the Landlord may hereafter make or adopt for the Building or Property. Landlord may waive or modify any of such rules in the case of any one or more tenants, or their employees, agents, invitees and visitors, without affecting the Tenant’s obligations under this Lease, and Landlord shall not be responsible to the Tenant for the nonconformance by any other tenant, or its employees, agents, invitees or visitors to any of said rules or regulations.

Section 7.5. Hazardous Substances. Tenant shall not use, store, generate or dispose of any Hazardous Substances (as defined below), or permit the same, in, on, above or below any part of the Premises. Building or Property, except only reasonable quantities of normal and customary office supplies used in compliance with applicable laws, which Tenant shall remove at the end of the term, or earlier if they pose a danger to persons or property. Tenant shall Indemnify and hold Landlord harmless from all claims, damages, fines, judgments, penalties, costs, liabilities or losses (including, without limitation, a decrease in the value of the Premises, Building, or Property, due to loss or restriction of rentable or usable space, any damages due to adverse impact on marketing of the space, and any and all sums paid for settlement of claims, attorney’s fees, consultant and expert fees) arising during or after the Term as a result of a breach of this section by Tenant or as a result of the use, storage, generation or disposal of Hazardous Substances by Tenant, or Tenant’s employees, agents or invitees in, on, above, or below any part of the Premises, Building or Property, whether permitted under this section or not. “Hazardous Substance” means any substance which is toxic, ignitable, reactive, or corrosive and which is regulated by any governmental body having jurisdiction over the same, and includes any and all materials or substances which are defined as “hazardous waste”, “extremely hazardous waste” or a “hazardous substance” pursuant to state, federal or local law. “Hazardous Substance” includes, but is not restricted to, asbestos, polychlorobiphenyls (“PCB’s”) and petroleum.

**ARTICLE VIII
INSURANCE AND INDEMNITY**

Section 8.1. Landlord’s Insurance. Landlord shall keep the Building insured against damage and destruction by fire and such other perils as Landlord in Landlord’s sole discretion shall determine, in the amount of at least ninety (90%) percent of the replacement value of the Building. Landlord shall also maintain commercial general liability insurance with respect to the Common Areas, covering bodily injury, including death, and property damage in the amount of at least Two Million Dollars (\$2,000,000.00) per occurrence, combined single limit, and annual aggregate limit. Landlord is not obligated to insure fixtures or other property of Tenant.

Section 8.2. Tenant's Insurance. Tenant shall keep in force, during the term of this Lease, or any renewal or extension thereof, workers compensation insurance as required by law, and commercial general liability insurance, with respect to the Premises, Building and Property, covering bodily injury, including death, and property damage, with such limits as may be reasonably requested by Landlord, but with minimum limits not less than Two Million Dollars (\$2,000,000.00) per occurrence, combined single limit, and annual aggregate limit, with a contractual liability endorsement, which liability insurance shall name Landlord as an additional insured and provide that it shall not be canceled for any reason unless Landlord is given fifteen (15) days notice in writing by the insurance company. Tenant shall deposit with Landlord satisfactory evidence of the above coverages prior to occupancy of the Premises, and thereafter prior to expiration of any such coverages.

Section 8.3. Insurance Criteria. Insurance policies required by this Lease shall: (i) be issued by insurance companies licensed to do business in the state of North Carolina with general policyholder's ratings of at least A- and the financial rating of at least XI in the most current Best's Insurance Reports available on the Commencement Date. If the Best's ratings are changed or discontinued, the parties shall agree to an equivalent method of rating insurance companies. If the parties cannot agree they shall submit the dispute to arbitration; (ii) be primary policies - not as contributing with, or in excess of the coverage that the other party may carry; (iii) be permitted to be carried through a "blanket policy" or "umbrella" coverage; (iv) be maintained during the entire Term and any extension Terms; and (v) with regard to Tenant's insurance only, have deductibles no greater than \$1,000.00.

Section 8.4. Increase in Insurance Premium. If Tenant uses the Premises in any manner which causes the premium rate for any kind of insurance maintained by Landlord on the Building or Property to be raised, Tenant shall pay on demand the amount of the increase in such premium and, at the request of Landlord, remedy the condition which caused the increase in premium.

Section 8.5. Tenant's Indemnity. The Tenant agrees to indemnify, and hold harmless, the Landlord and the agents and employees of the Landlord, from any claims or demands by or on behalf of any person, firm, corporation or other entity or party and any liability, loss, damage or expense, including reasonable attorneys' fees, suffered or incurred by Landlord, or Landlord's agents and employees, arising by reason of injury to any person, including death, or damage to property, occurring in, on, or about the Premises, Building or Property, occasioned in whole or in part by any act or omission on the part of the Tenant or any employee (whether or not acting within the scope of employment), agent, invitee, visitor, contractor, subcontractor, assignee or tenant of the Tenant, or by reason of nonperformance of any covenant in this Lease on the part of the Tenant, except, however, to the extent that such claims result from the acts or omissions of Landlord, or Landlord's employees, agents, or invitees (provided, however, tenants of the Building (including Tenant), and their agents, employees, invitees, contractors, and visitors shall not be considered Landlord's invitees for the purpose of this Section), or to the extent such claims result from the nonperformance of any covenant in this Lease on the part of Landlord. Tenant agrees to pay for all damage to any part of the Building or Property, as well as damage to tenants or occupants thereof, caused by Tenant's misuse or neglect of said Premises, its apparatus or appurtenances. Landlord shall not be liable to Tenant for any damage by or from any act or omission of any other tenant or occupant of the Building or by any owner or occupant of adjoining or contiguous property.

Section 8.6. Tenant's Personal Property. Tenant shall insure its personal property, trade fixtures, and non-Building Standard improvements in the Premises and Building with "all risks" insurance in an amount to cover the full replacement cost of the same, and all personal property, trade fixtures and non Building Standard improvements in the Premises, including that of Tenant, and Tenant's employees, agents, invitees and visitors, shall remain therein at Tenant's sole risk, and Landlord shall not be liable for any damage to, or loss of such personal property, trade fixtures or non-Building Standard improvements arising from fire or the leaking of the roof, or from the bursting, leaking, or overflowing of water, sewer or steam pipes or from any other cause whatsoever, and Tenant shall indemnify and hold Landlord harmless in all such cases. Also, as provided in Section 6.4. hereinabove, Tenant shall be responsible for and shall pay for the cost of repair of any water damage to the Building or Property or any part thereof, as well as to any other property of Landlord or any other tenant, caused by the malfunction, leaking or misuse of any of Tenant's water using

equipment, and Landlord shall not be responsible therefor, whether such damage is covered by Landlord's or such other tenant's insurance or not.

Section 8.7. Waiver of Subrogation. Each party waives claims arising in any manner in its (Injured Party's) favor and against the other party for loss or damage to Injured Party's property located within or constituting a part or all of the Building. This waiver applies to the extent the loss or damage is covered by the Injured Party's insurance or the insurance the Injured Party is required to carry under Article VIII, whichever is greater. The waiver also applies to each party's directors, officers, employees, members, partners, shareholders, and agents. The waiver does not apply to claims caused by a party's willful misconduct. Each party shall cause its property and general liability insurance to contain a standard waiver of subrogation endorsement or provisions providing for such waiver of subrogation. If despite a party's best efforts it cannot find an insurance company meeting the criteria in Section 8.3. that will give the waiver of subrogation endorsement or provisions at reasonable commercial rates, then it shall give notice to the other party, and unless the parties otherwise agree as provided below, then both parties shall be released from their obligation to obtain the waiver and the waiver of claims provided for hereinabove. If an insurance company is found but it will give the waiver only at rates greater than reasonable commercial rates, then the parties can agree to pay for the waiver under any agreement they can negotiate. If the parties cannot in good faith negotiate an agreement, then both parties shall be released from their obligation to obtain the waiver and the waiver of claims provided for hereinabove.

**ARTICLE IX
DAMAGES TO PREMISES**

Section 9.1. Definition. "Relevant Space" means: (i) the Premises as defined in Article II, excluding Tenant's non-Building Standard fixtures; (ii) access to the Premises; and (iii) any part of the Building that provides essential services to the Premises.

Section 9.2. Repair of Damage. If the Relevant Space is damaged by fire, storm, flood, earthquake or other insured casualty and can be substantially repaired and restored within one hundred eighty (180) days from the date that a permit is issued for such repair or restoration work, Landlord shall use reasonable efforts to repair and restore the Relevant Space to its previous condition, provided, however, if the Relevant Space cannot be repaired and restored within the one hundred eighty (180) day period, then either party may, within ten (10) days after determining that the repairs and restoration cannot be made within one hundred eighty (180) days, cancel the Lease by giving notice to the other party, provided further, however, Tenant shall not be able to cancel this Lease if its willful misconduct caused the damage. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Tenant shall reimburse Landlord for the cost of repairing and restoring the Building or Property or any part thereof, to the extent that any water damage is due to the malfunction, leaking or misuse of any Tenant personal property, equipment, or non-Building Standard Improvements, including, without limitation, refrigerators, fish tanks, icemakers, water fountains and water coolers.

Section 9.3. Abatement. Unless the damage is caused by Tenant's willful misconduct, the Base Rent and other rentals hereunder shall abate in proportion to that part of the Premises that is unfit for use in Tenant's business, considering the nature and extent of interference to Tenant's ability to conduct business in the Premises and the need for access and essential services, and shall continue until repairs and restoration to the Relevant Space are completed, provided that in the event of a full abatement of rent, the Term shall be extended automatically for a period equal to the period of such full abatement.

Section 9.4. Tenant's Property. Landlord is not obligated to repair or restore damage to Tenant's trade fixtures, furniture, equipment or other personal property, or any Tenant improvements unless, In the case of Tenant improvements only, such Tenant improvements are considered a part of the Building and covered under Landlord's property and casualty insurance policy.

Section 9.5. Landlord's Right to Cancel. If with regard to damage to the Relevant Space: (i) more than forty percent (40%) of the Building is damaged; (ii) any secured lender of the Landlord and Building shall not allow adequate insurance proceeds for repair and restoration; (iii) the damage is not covered by Landlord's insurance; or (iv) the Lease is in the last twelve (12) months of the Term; then Landlord may cancel this Lease by giving notice to Tenant within thirty (30) days after Landlord knows of the event which

gives Landlord the right to cancel, which notice shall specify the cancellation date, which shall be at least thirty (30) but not more than sixty (60) days after the date notice is given.

Section 9.6. Cancellation. If either party cancels this Lease as permitted by this Article, Base Rent, and any other rentals hereunder shall be payable up to the cancellation date and account for any abatement.

**ARTICLE X
EMINENT DOMAIN**

Section 10.1. Right to Terminate. If any part of the Premises is taken by right of eminent domain or private purchase in lieu thereof, then either party hereto shall have the right to terminate this Lease effective on the date physical possession is taken by the condemning authority or private purchaser, by written notice to the other party prior to or within ten (10) days after said effective date provided, however, if the Lease is not terminated, the rental specified herein shall be reduced during the unexpired Term in proportion to the area of the Premises so taken and shall be effective on the date physical possession is taken by the condemning authority or private purchaser.

Section 10.2. Compensation. All compensation awarded for any taking (or the proceeds of private sale in lieu thereof) whether for the whole or a part of the Premises, shall be the property of Landlord whether such award is compensation for damages to Landlord’s or Tenant’s interest, provided Landlord shall have no interest in any award made to Tenant for loss of business, moving expenses, or for the taking of Tenant’s fixtures and other tangible personal property within the Premises, if a separate award for such items is made to Tenant.

**ARTICLE XI
DEFAULT AND WAIVER**

Section 11.1. Tenant’s Default. Tenant shall be in default under this Lease if:

- (i) Tenant fails to pay Monthly Base Rent or any other sum due hereunder on the applicable due date and such failure is not cured within five (5) days after Tenant’s receipt of written notice thereof from Landlord, subject to the terms of Section 11.1 (ii) below;
- (ii) Tenant fails to pay Monthly Base Rent by its due date, at any time during a calendar year in which Tenant has already received two notices of its failure to pay Monthly Base Rent, by its due date;
- (iii) Tenant fails to perform any other Tenant obligation within a period of thirty (30) days or the additional time, if any, that is reasonably necessary to promptly and diligently cure the failure, after Tenant receives notice from Landlord setting forth in reasonable detail the nature and extent of the failure and identifying the applicable Lease provision, provided, however, that such cure period shall not apply to emergencies or the failure to maintain the insurance required by Section 8.2;
- (iv) Tenant abandons or vacates the Premises; or
- (v) Tenant fails to vacate or stay any of the following within thirty (30) days after they occur:
 - A. a petition in bankruptcy is filed by or against Tenant;
 - B. Tenant is adjudicated as bankrupt or insolvent;
 - C. a receiver, trustee, or liquidator is appointed for all or a substantial part of Tenant’s property; or
 - D. Tenant makes an assignment for the benefit of creditors.

Section 11.2. Landlord's Remedies.

- (i) Upon Tenant's default, Landlord shall have all remedies provided in this Lease, as well as in law or equity, including, without limitation, the right to end this Lease or Tenant's right to possession hereunder, in which case Tenant shall immediately vacate the Premises, with or without process of law, and if necessary, remove Tenant, with or without having ended the Lease, and alter locks and other security devices at the Premises, and Tenant waives any claim for damages by reason of Landlord's reentry, repossession, or alteration of locks or other security devices and for damages by reason of any legal process.
- (ii) Landlord's exercise of any of its remedies or its receipt of Tenant's keys shall not be considered an acceptance of surrender or a surrender of the Premises by Tenant, unless such surrender is agreed to in writing by Landlord.
- (iii) If Landlord ends this Lease or Tenant's right to possess the Premises hereunder, Tenant shall be liable to Landlord for Monthly Base Rent, and any other indebtedness of Tenant under the Lease, accrued to the date the Lease or Tenant's right to possession ends and thereafter scheduled during the remainder of the Term, reduced only by any sums Landlord receives by reletting the Premises during the scheduled term, provided, however, if Landlord relets the Premises during the remainder of the scheduled term, at a rental in excess of that provided for under this Lease, Tenant shall not be entitled to any such excess rental, and Tenant waives any claim thereto.
- (iv) Tenant shall also be liable for that part of the following sums paid by Landlord and attributable to that part of the term ended due to Tenant's default:
 - A. reasonable broker's fees incurred by Landlord for reletting part or all of the Premises prorated for the part of the reletting term ending concurrently with the scheduled term of this Lease;
 - B. the cost of removing and storing Tenant's property;
 - C. the cost of repairs, alterations, and remodeling necessary to put the Premises In a condition reasonably acceptable to a new tenant; and
 - D. other necessary and reasonable expenses incurred by Landlord in enforcing its remedies.
- (v) Landlord may sue and take any other action provided by law to collect the amounts due hereunder at any time, and from time to time without waiving its rights to sue for and collect further amounts due from Tenant hereunder.

Section 11.3. Partial Payment. In the event Landlord brings a summary ejectment or other legal proceeding against Tenant based on Tenant's default hereunder, Landlord may accept less than full payment of any monetary obligations then owing by Tenant to Landlord during the pendency of such proceeding without waiving its rights to prosecute its claim to completion, and Tenant acknowledges and agrees that Landlord may continue its proceeding notwithstanding such partial payment by Tenant, and Tenant waives any legal or equitable defenses to Landlord's continued prosecution of its claim, except only if Landlord agrees in writing to suspend the prosecution of its claim for a time certain, in which case if Tenant fails to pay its monetary obligations in full within such time certain, Landlord may thereupon continue the prosecution of its claim. Further, if Landlord terminates this Lease or Tenant's right to possession hereunder based on Tenant's default hereunder, Landlord may accept full payment or a portion of Tenant's monetary obligations hereunder without waiving its right to obtain possession of the Premises in summary ejectment or other legal proceeding, both parties acknowledging that the monetary obligations of Tenant are due to Landlord, notwithstanding Landlord's taking possession of the Premises, for the period up to the date Landlord obtains possession of the Premises and thereafter, subject, however, to Landlord's obligation to mitigate its damages by using reasonable efforts to relet the Premises subsequent to taking possession of the Premises.

Section 11.4. Waiver. The waiver of the breach of any agreement herein by either party in any one instance shall not be deemed to be a waiver of such agreement or any subsequent breach of the same or

any other agreement herein contained, and the acceptance of rent hereunder by Landlord subsequent to the breach of this Lease by Tenant shall not be deemed to be a waiver of such breach, other than the failure of Tenant to pay the particular rental so accepted, regardless of Landlord's knowledge of such breach at the time of acceptance of such rent.

Section 11.5. Landlord's Default. Landlord shall not be in default for failure to perform any of its Lease obligations until after a period of thirty (30) days or the additional time, if any, that is reasonably necessary to promptly and diligently cure the failure after receiving notice from Tenant, in writing and giving in reasonable detail the nature and extent of the failure and identifying the Lease provision(s) containing the obligation(s).

Section 11.6. Survival. The remedies provided in this Article XI and any other provisions of this Lease which by their nature would require the survival of the ending of this Lease, shall survive the ending of this Lease.

ARTICLE XII ASSIGNMENT AND SUBLETTING

Section 12.1. Consent Required. Tenant shall not transfer, mortgage, grant a security interest in, encumber, or assign this Lease, or any interest therein, or sublease all or part of the Premises, without Landlord's advance written consent, which in the case of an assignment or sublease, shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed, provided, however, Landlord may withhold its consent to the granting of a security interest in, or mortgaging of, Tenant's leasehold estate, or any interest therein, in Landlord's sole discretion. Assignments requiring Landlord's consent shall include, and be deemed to mean, without limitation, assignments by operation of law, an imposition (whether or not consensual) of a lien, mortgage, or encumbrance upon Tenant's interest in this Lease (the consent to which Landlord may withhold in its sole discretion as provided above), an arrangement (including, without limitation, management agreements, concessions and licenses) that allow the use and occupancy of all or part of the Premises by anyone other than Tenant, a transfer of voting control of Tenant (if Tenant is a corporation) and a transfer of more than fifty percent (50%) of the interest in the capital of Tenant if Tenant is a partnership or limited liability company. On sublease and assignment, Tenant will be responsible for any and all costs that Landlord incurs on behalf of Tenant in its review and/or approval of such sublease or assignment, including, but not limited to, attorney's fees.

Section 12.2. Reasonableness. The Landlord's consent, with regard to subleases and assignments, shall not be considered unreasonably withheld if: (i) the proposed subtenant's or assignee's financial responsibility does not meet the same criteria Landlord uses to select comparable Building tenants; (ii) the proposed subtenant's or assignee's business is not suitable for the Building considering the business of the other tenants and the Building's prestige; (iii) the proposed use is inconsistent with the use permitted by Section 7.1; (iv) the proposed use violates an exclusive use granted to a prior tenant; or (v) any other reason exists which Landlord, acting reasonably, believes is sufficient to justify its withholding of consent.

Section 12.3. Procedure. With regard to a proposed sublease or assignment, Tenant shall provide Landlord in writing: (i) the name and address of the proposed subtenant or assignee; (ii) the nature of the proposed subtenant's or assignee's business it will operate in the Premises; (iii) the terms of the proposed sublease or assignment; and (iv) reasonable financial information so that Landlord can evaluate the proposed subtenant or assignee under this article, and Landlord shall, with regard to a sublease or assignment only, within thirty (30) days after receiving the information required, give notice to Tenant to permit or deny the proposed sublease or assignment.

Section 12.4. Conditions. Subleases and Assignments by Tenant are also subject to: (i) the terms of this Lease; (ii) the Term shall not extend beyond the Term; (iii) Tenant and any guarantor of this Lease shall not be released and shall remain liable for all Lease obligations; (iv) consent to one sublease or assignment does not waive the consent requirement for future assignments or subleases; and (v) one hundred percent (100%) of the consideration (Excess Consideration) received by Tenant from an assignment or sublease that exceeds the amount Tenant must pay Landlord, which amount is to be prorated where a part of the Premises is subleased or assigned, shall also be paid to Landlord, within ten (10) days of receipt of same, with a detailed statement showing the total consideration paid to Tenant by the subtenant or assignee.

Landlord shall have the right to audit Tenant’s books and records to verify the accuracy of the detailed statement.

Section 12.5. Leasehold Mortgage or Security Interest. If Landlord consents to Tenant’s granting a security interest in, or mortgaging, Tenant’s leasehold estate, which consent Landlord may withhold in its sole discretion, Tenant shall indemnify Landlord and hold Landlord harmless from any loss, cost or expense, including reasonable attorney’s fees, incurred by Landlord with respect thereto, as a result of such security interest or mortgage, and such consent shall not be considered a waiver of the requirement to obtain Landlord’s consent with regard to any future security interest or mortgage, of the Tenant’s leasehold estate.

Section 12.6. Remedy. If Tenant believes that Landlord has unreasonably withheld its consent under this Article, Tenant’s sole remedy will be to seek a declaratory judgment that Landlord has unreasonably withheld its consent or an order of specific performance or mandatory injunction of Landlord’s agreement to give its consent, and Tenant shall not have any right to recover damages or to terminate this Lease.

**ARTICLE XIII
SUBORDINATION**

Section 13.1. Subordination. This Lease, and Tenant’s rights hereunder, shall at all times be subordinate to all mortgages and deeds of trust now existing or hereafter placed on the Building or Property, provided, however, Tenant will not be disturbed in the use or enjoyment of the Premises so long as it is not in default hereunder, and this Lease shall remain in full force and effect, notwithstanding any default or foreclosure under any such mortgage or deed of trust, and Tenant will attorn to the mortgagee, trustee or beneficiary of such mortgage or deed of trust, and the successor or assign of any of them, and to the purchaser or assignee under any foreclosure, provided further, however, any secured lender of Landlord holding a mortgage or deed of trust on, or security interest in, the Building or Property, may in its sole discretion, subordinate its interest to Tenant’s interest in this Lease by written notice of such subordination to Tenant.

Section 13.2. Execution of Instruments. Tenant will, upon request by Landlord, execute and deliver to Landlord, or to any other person designated by Landlord, any instrument or instruments, including, but not limited to, such subordination, attornment and nondisturbance agreements, or estoppel letters, as may be required by any mortgagee in a mortgage or beneficiary in any deed of trust, on the Building or Property, or other secured lender, to give effect to the provisions of Section 13.1. above or requested by Landlord in connection with a sale or mortgage of the Building or Property and shall execute and deliver to Landlord such amendments to this Lease as may be required by such proposed mortgagee, beneficiary, or other secured lender, on the Building or Property, provided, however, that such amendments do not materially increase the obligations and duties of Tenant hereunder. Tenant will also require any subtenant of Tenant to execute any of the foregoing instruments if requested to do so by Landlord or any lender of Landlord.

**ARTICLE XIV
GENERAL PROVISIONS**

Section 14.1. Transfer of Landlord’s Interest. The term “Landlord” as used in this Lease means only the owner, or the mortgagee in possession, for the time being of the Building or Property, or the owner of any lease of the Building or Property, so that in the event of any sale of said Building or Property, or of said lease, or in the event of a lease of said Building or Property, the transferring landlord shall be entirely freed and relieved of all obligations of Landlord hereunder, and it shall be deemed without further agreement between the parties or their successors in interest or between the parties and the transferee, purchaser or lessee at any such sale or lease of the Building or Property, that the transferee, purchaser or lessee of the Building or Property has assumed all obligations of Landlord hereunder, and Landlord’s assignment, sale or transfer of the Lease or of any of its rights herein shall in no manner affect Tenant’s obligations hereunder, and Tenant shall thereafter attorn to such assignee, transferee, purchaser or lessee, as Landlord, provided Tenant first has written notice of such transfer, assignment, purchase or lease of Landlord’s interest. Any

security given by Tenant to Landlord to secure performance of Tenant's obligations hereunder may be transferred by Landlord to the successor in interest to Landlord; and, upon acknowledgment by such successor of receipt of such security and its express assumption of the obligation to account to Tenant for such security in accordance with the terms of this Lease, Landlord shall thereby be discharged of any further obligation relating thereto.

Section 14.2. Landlord's Limited Liability. Notwithstanding any other provision in this Lease to the contrary, the liability of Landlord shall be limited to the equity of Landlord In the Property In the event of a failure by Landlord to perform any of the terms, covenants, conditions or agreements of this Lease to be performed by Landlord, and Tenant agrees that any judgment it may obtain against Landlord, or Landlord's general partners, if any, as a result of the breach of this Lease as aforesaid, shall be enforceable solely against the Landlord's equity interest in the Property.

Section 14.3. Landlord Not Partner. It is agreed that Landlord is not a partner, joint venturer or associate of Tenant in the conduct of Tenant's business, that the provisions of this Lease with respect to the payment by Tenant of rent are not sharing of profits, that the relationship between the parties is and shall remain at all times that of landlord and tenant, and that no provision of this Lease shall be construed to impose upon the parties hereto any obligation or restriction not expressly set forth herein.

Section 14.4. Recording. The recording of this Lease is prohibited, provided, however, at the request of either party, the parties shall promptly execute and record, at the cost of the requesting party, a short form memorandum describing the Premises and stating the term of this Lease, its Commencement and Termination Dates, and any other information the parties agree to include.

Section 14.5. Additional Instruments. The parties agree to execute and deliver any instruments in writing necessary to carry out any agreement, term, condition or assurance in this Lease whenever occasion shall arise and reasonable request for any such instrument shall be made.

Section 14.6. Lease Not An Offer. Landlord has given this Lease to Tenant for review, which does not constitute an offer to lease and shall not be binding unless signed by both parties.

Section 14.7. Pronouns. All pronouns and any variations thereof shall be deemed to refer to the masculine, feminine, neuter, singular or plural, as the identity of the person(s), firm(s), or corporation(s) may require.

Section 14.8. Counterparts. This Lease may be executed in counterparts, all of which taken together, shall be deemed one original.

Section 14.9. Entire Agreement, Amendment and Modification. This Lease embodies the full agreement of the parties and supersedes all prior understandings concerning the subject matter of this Lease, and any amendment or modification must be in writing and signed by both parties.

Section 14.10. Controlling Law. This Lease shall be construed and enforced in accordance with the law of the State of North Carolina.

Section 14.11. Binding Effect. This Lease shall be binding upon and inure to the benefit of the parties hereto, their assigns, administrators, successors, estates, heirs and legatees respectively, except as herein provided to the contrary.

Section 14.12. Partial Invalidity. In the event that any provision of this lease shall be determined to be invalid or unenforceable, the remaining provisions of this Lease which can be separated from the invalid, unenforceable provision shall continue in full force and effect.

Section 14.13. Captions. The section titles, numbers and captions contained in this Lease are only for convenience and reference, and in no way define, limit, extend, modify or describe the scope or intent of this Lease nor any provision herein.

Section 14.14. Relocation. In the event the Premises contains less than fifty percent (50%) of the total area of the floor on which it is located, Landlord, upon thirty (30) days prior written notice to Tenant, shall have the right to relocate the Tenant to another reasonably comparable location within the Building, in which case, Landlord will pay all actual costs of the relocation.

Section 14.15. Time of Essence. Except as otherwise provided in this Lease, time is of the essence in the performance of the provisions of this Lease.

Section 14.16. Warranties. Tenant warrants that it has had no dealing with any broker or agent in connection with the negotiation or execution of this Lease, and Tenant agrees to indemnify and hold Landlord harmless from and against any claims by any broker, agent or other person claiming a commission or other form of compensation by virtue of having dealt with Tenant with regard to this leasing transaction.

Section 14.17. Authority of Parties. Each party warrants that it is authorized to enter into this Lease, that the person signing on its behalf is duly authorized to execute the Lease, and that no other signatures are necessary, and each person signing this Lease certifies that he or she is authorized by the party on whose behalf such person is signing and that no further authorization or signatures are required for such person's signature to bind such party hereunder.

Section 14.18. Consent Not Unreasonably Withheld. When either party hereto is required to give its consent to the other party prior to doing or refraining from doing some act hereunder, it is agreed that the party whose consent is required shall not unreasonably withhold or delay such consent, unless it is specifically stated that the party whose consent is required may withhold such consent in its sole discretion, or words of similar import.

Section 14.19. Estoppel Certificates. Tenant shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to Landlord, from time to time during the term of this Lease within ten (10) days after Landlord provides Tenant with written notice to do so, an estoppel certificate certifying in writing that the Lease is in full force and effect, unmodified, or modified solely as set forth in such estoppel certificate including confirmation of the Commencement Date and the Termination Date, the date or dates to which rent has been paid and that Landlord has, as of the date of such estoppel certificate, fully and completely performed and complied with each of the terms and conditions of this Lease, without exception or except as only set forth in such estoppel certificate. Any such estoppel certificate may be conclusively relied upon by any prospective purchaser or encumbrancer of the Building or Property, and the failure of Tenant to so deliver such estoppel certificate in such period of time shall mean that the Tenant represents that the Lease is in full force and effect, without modification, that rent has not been prepaid under the Lease except as expressly required in the Lease and that Landlord has, as of the date on which Tenant failed to deliver such estoppel certificate, fully and completely performed and complied with each of these terms and conditions, without exception.

Section 14.20. Rights Reserved by Landlord. Notwithstanding any other provision of this Lease, Landlord shall at all times have the right to (a) grant to any tenant an exclusive use to conduct a particular type of business in the Building, (b) change the name or address of the Building, (c) install and maintain signs on the exterior or interior of the Building, (d) retain pass keys to all locks within or into the Premises, and (e) make any alterations, additions or improvements to the Building or Property as Landlord may deem in its sole discretion necessary for the safety, protection, preservation, or improvement of the Building or Property, and to change the arrangement and/or location of entrances, passageways, doors, corridors, elevators, stairs, toilets and public parts of the Building and Property.

Section 14.21. Financial Information. Tenant acknowledges that the financial capability of Tenant to perform its obligations hereunder is material to Landlord and that Landlord would not enter into this Lease but for its belief, based on its review of Tenant's financial statements, that Tenant is capable of performing such financial obligations. Tenant hereby represents, warrants and certifies to Landlord that its financial statements, if previously furnished to Landlord, were at the time given true and correct in all material respects and that there have been no material subsequent changes thereto as of the date of this Lease. At any time during the Lease term, Tenant shall provide Landlord, upon ten (10) days prior written notice from Landlord, with a current financial statement and financial statements of the two (2) years prior to the current financial statement year, which statements shall be prepared in accordance with generally accepted

accounting principles and, if such is the normal practice of Tenant, shall be adjusted by an independent certified public accountant.

REMAINDER OF PAGE LEFT BLANK

SIGNATURES ON FOLLOWING PAGE

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused these presents to be executed under seal the date and year first above written.

WITNESS:

[ILLEGIBLE]

WITNESS:

[ILLEGIBLE]

LANDLORD:

MIDTOWN AREA PARTNERS, LLC

By: [ILLEGIBLE] (SEAL)

[ILLEGIBLE]

Print Name and Title

TENANT:

PHENOGEN SCIENCES, INC.

By: /s/ Kevin Fischer (SEAL)

Kevin Fischer (CFO/Company Secretary)

EXHIBIT A
REAL PROPERTY DESCRIPTION

LYING AND BEING in Charlotte, Mecklenburg County, North Carolina, and being more particularly described as follows:

BEING ALL OF Lot 1 as shown on that certain Recombination Plat entitled “Baxter at Kings-Map 1” recorded in Map Book 55 at Page 272 in the Mecklenburg County Public Registry.

TOGETHER WITH AND SUBJECT TO those certain access and parking easements set forth in that certain Easement and Restriction Agreement between Midtown Area Partners, LLC and Midtown Area Partners II, LLC recorded in Book 28826 at Page 499 in the Mecklenburg County Public Registry.

EXHIBIT B
FLOOR PLAN

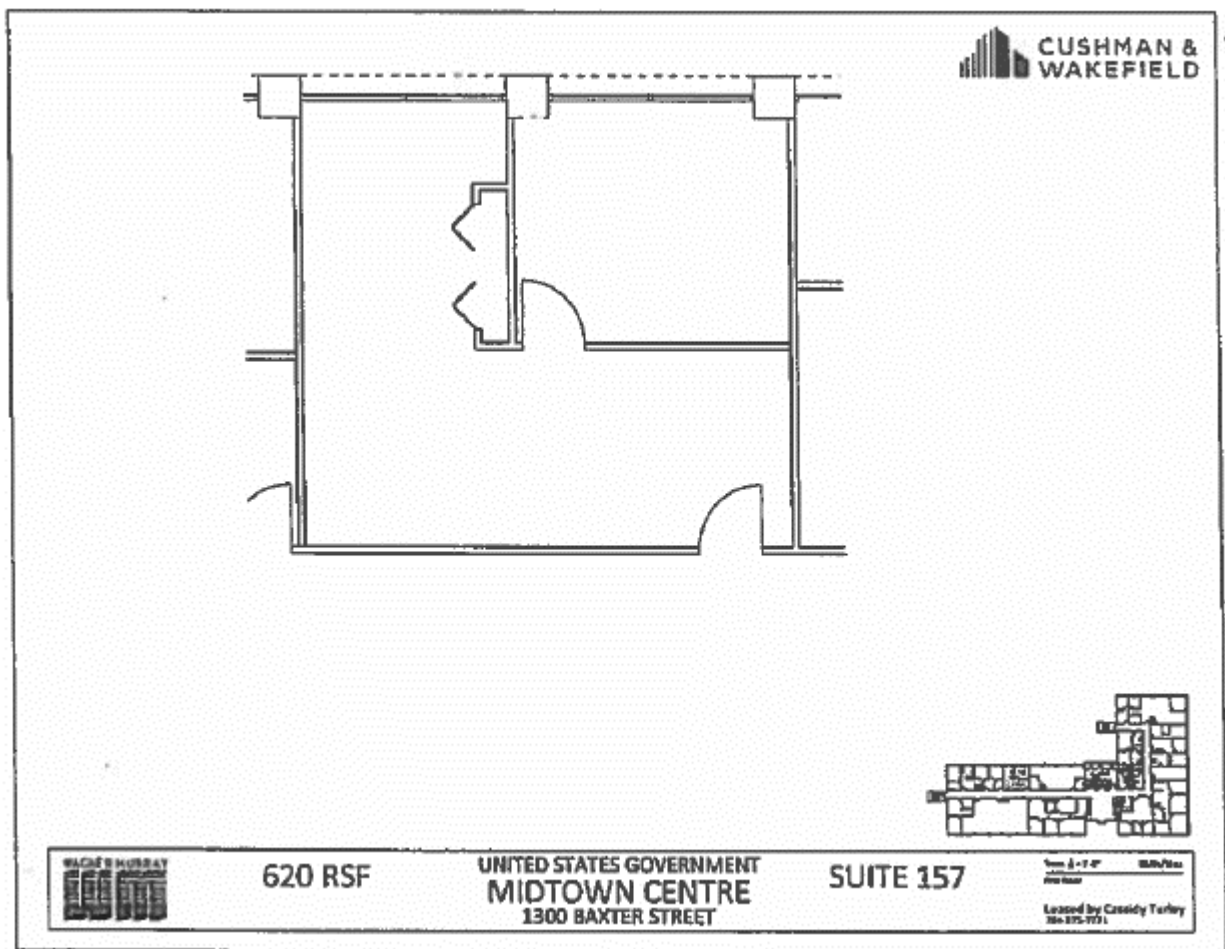


EXHIBIT C
UPFITTING

The Landlord shall provide the following improvements to the Premises:

- Shampoo clean the existing carpet.
- Install bi-fold doors to the existing closet.

EXHIBIT D
ILLUSTRATION OF ANNUAL AND MONTHLY BASE RENT INCREASE

For purpose of Illustration only, assume the following:

(1) Initial Annual Base Rent - \$20,000.00 (\$20.00 per rentable square foot) ($\$20.00 \times 1.000 = \$20,000.00$)

(2) Initial Monthly Base Rent - \$1,666.67

(3) Annual Increase - 3%

(4) Rentable Area of Premises -1,000 square feet

(5)
First Increase: $\$1,666.67 \times 1.03 = \$1,716.67$ (New Monthly Base Rent)

Second Increase: $\$1,716.67 \times 1.03 = \$1,768.17$ (New Monthly Base Rent)

Each successive increase shall be calculated in a like manner.

The foregoing is for illustrative purposes only and shall not operate to change the terms of the Lease.

EXHIBIT E
PARKING RULES AND REGULATIONS

Parking: The following rules and regulations apply to the use of the Parking Areas (the Parking Areas”):

- (a) Tenants may park their motor vehicles only in those portions of the Parking Areas designated by Landlord from time to time as unreserved tenant parking areas (the “Unreserved Parking Areas”) and may not park in any other parking spaces except as specifically provided herein.
- (b) Only visitors of tenants or others entitled to the use of the Parking Areas may park their motor vehicles in those portions of the Parking Areas designated by Landlord from time to time as visitor parking areas (the “visitor Parking Areas”).
- (c) Only persons entitled to use the Parking Areas who are physically handicapped may park their motor vehicles in those portions of the Parking Areas designated by Landlord from time to time as handicapped parking areas (the “Handicapped Parking Areas”).
- (d) Parking in Unreserved Parking Areas, Visitor Parking Areas and Handicapped Parking Areas shall be on a nonexclusive, “as-available” basis.
- (e) No representation or warranty is made by Landlord as to the number or location of parking spaces comprising the Parking Areas, or any portion thereof.
- (f) Motor vehicles may only be parked in striped parking spaces located within the Parking Areas and no motor vehicles may be parked in any other location within the Property.
- (g) Not more than one motor vehicle may be parked on each parking space and no motor vehicle may be parked on more than one parking space within the Parking Areas.
- (h) Parking Areas shall not be used for any purpose other than the parking of permitted motor vehicles thereon and no commercial activity shall be conducted from the Parking Areas.
- (i) No repairs (other than emergency repairs) or washing of motor vehicles are permitted in the Parking Areas.
- (j) All persons using the Parking Areas assume full responsibility for, and Landlord shall have no liability for, (a) loss, damage, injury or death caused to the person or property of anyone using the Parking Areas; and (b) protecting their motor vehicles against theft, vandalism and damage.
- (k) A violation of these Rules shall entitle Landlord to revoke the parking privileges of the offending party, in addition to other rights and remedies available to Landlord.
- (l) The term “tenant” when used herein shall be deemed to also include such tenant’s agents and employees.

EXHIBIT F
BUILDING RULES AND REGULATIONS

1. Sidewalks, doorways, vestibules, halls, stairways and other similar areas shall not be obstructed by tenants or used by any tenant for any purpose other than ingress and egress to and from the leased premises and for going from one to another part of the Building.
2. Corridor doors, when not in use, shall be kept closed.
3. Plumbing fixtures and appliances shall be used only for the purposes for which designed, and no sweepings, rubbish, rags or other unsuitable material shall be thrown or placed therein.
4. Landlord shall provide all locks for doors into each tenant's leased area, and no tenant shall place any additional lock or locks on any door in its leased area without Landlord's prior written consent. Two keys for each lock on the doors in each tenant's leased area shall be furnished by Landlord. Additional keys shall be made available to tenants at each tenant's cost. Tenants shall not have any duplicate keys made except by Landlord.
5. Electric current shall not be used for cooking (except for normal and customary microwave and stove approved in advance by Landlord which comply with applicable law and conform to customary fire insurance underwriting guidelines), or heating or any other purpose not specifically provided for in the Lease without Landlord's prior written permission.
6. Tenants shall refer all contractors, contractors' representatives and installation technicians who are to perform any work within the Building to Landlord for Landlord's supervision, approval and control before the performance of any such work. This provision shall apply to all work performed in the Building including, but not limited to, installations of telephones, medical type equipment, telegraph equipment, electrical devices and attachments, and any and all installations of every nature affecting floors, walls, woodwork, trim, windows, ceilings, equipment, and any other physical portion of the Building.
7. Movement in or out of the Building of furniture or office equipment, or dispatch or receipt by tenants of any heavy equipment, bulky material or merchandise shall be performed only in such manner, during such hours and using such elevators and passageways as the Landlord may designate and approve in advance and, if reasonable, necessary or appropriate in view of all the circumstances, and then only upon having been scheduled in advance with the Landlord or Landlord's manager.
8. The location, weight and supporting devices for any medical type equipment, safes and other heavy equipment shall in all cases be approved by Landlord prior to initial installation or relocation.
9. No portion of any tenant's leased area shall be used for cooking (except for normal and customary microwave and stove approved in advance by Landlord which comply with applicable law and conform to customary fire insurance underwriting guidelines), sleeping or lodging quarters, no birds, animals or pets of any type, with the exception of guide dogs accompanying visually handicapped persons, shall be brought into or kept in, on or about any tenant's leased area or the Building. Tenant shall not bring bicycles or other vehicles within the Premises or Building; engage in or permit games of chance or any form of gambling or immoral conduct in or about the Premises or Building; mark or defile any part of the Building or Property; fasten any article, drill holes, drive nails or screws into walls, floors, doors or partitions, or otherwise mar or deface any of them by paint, paper or otherwise except as specifically allowed In the Lease; or tamper or interfere In any way with windows, doors, locks, air conditioning controls, heating, lighting, electric or plumbing fixtures. All moving in or out of leased premises must be done after business hours, as defined in the Lease. Landlord is not responsible for damage to furniture caused by janitor or any other cleaning personnel, nor for any loss of property from the Premises however occurring. The attaching of wires to the outside of the Building is absolutely prohibited, and no wires shall be run or installed in any part of the Building without the Landlord's permission and at Landlord's direction. No smoking

of tobacco or similar products shall be allowed in any portion of the Building or Premises. Smoking shall be allowed only in designated areas outside of the Building.

10. Tenants shall not make or permit any loud or annoying noises in or about the Building or otherwise interfere in any way with other tenants or persons having business with them.
11. Each tenant shall endeavor to keep its leased area neat and clean. Nothing shall be swept or thrown into the corridors, halls, elevator shafts or stairways, nor shall tenants place any trash receptacles in these areas.
12. Tenants shall not employ any person for the purpose of cleaning other than the authorized cleaning and maintenance personnel for the Building unless otherwise approved in writing by Landlord.
13. No tenant shall allow concessionaires, vending machine operators or other distributors of cold drinks, coffee, food or other concessions, water, towels or newspapers or other similar products, within the Premises or Building without the prior consent of Landlord which Landlord may withhold in its sole discretion.
14. Landlord is not responsible for any loss of money, jewelry or other personal property from leased premises or Common Areas or for any damage to any property therein from any cause whatsoever whether such loss or damage occurs when an area is locked against entry or not.
15. Tenants shall exercise reasonable precautions in protection of their personal property from loss or damage by keeping doors to unattended areas locked. Tenants shall also report any thefts or losses to the Building Manager and security personnel as soon as reasonably possible after discovery and shall also notify the Building Manager and security personnel of the presence of any persons whose conduct is suspicious or causes a disturbance.
16. Tenants, their employees, patients, guests and invitees may be called upon to show suitable identification and sign a Building register when entering or leaving the Building at times other than normal Building business hours, and all tenants shall cooperate fully with Building personnel in complying with such requirements.
17. Tenants shall not solicit from or circulate advertising material among other tenants of the Building, or allow its employees, agents or invitees to do so, except through the regular use of the U.S. Postal Service. Tenants shall notify the Building Manager or the Building personnel promptly if it comes to their attention that any unauthorized persons are soliciting from or causing annoyance to tenants, their employees, guests or invitees.
18. Landlord reserves the right to deny entrance to the Building or remove any person or persons from the Building in any case where the conduct of such person or persons involves a hazard or nuisance to any tenant of the Building or to the public or in the event of fire or other emergency, riot, civil commotion or similar disturbance involving risk to the Building, tenants or the general public. Solicitation or similar conduct shall not be allowed in the Building or Property without Landlord's prior approval, which approval Landlord may withhold in its sole discretion. Landlord shall have no liability for denying access to the Building or Property by any person or persons engaging in such conduct.
19. Landlord reserves the right to rescind or modify any of these rules and regulations and to make such other and further rules and regulations as in its judgment shall from time to time be needful for the safety, protection, care and cleanliness of the Building, the operation thereof, the preservation of good order therein and the protection and comfort of the tenants and their agents, employees and invitees, which rules and regulations, when made and written notice thereof is given to a tenant, shall be binding upon it in like manner as if originally herein prescribed.

SARBANES-OXLEY SECTION 302(a) CERTIFICATION

I, Paul Kasian, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this annual report on Form 20-F of Genetic Technologies Limited;
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the company as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the company and have:
 - (a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the company, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
 - (b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
 - (c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the company's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
 - (d) Disclosed in this report any change in the company's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the period covered by the annual report that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect the company's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the company's auditors and the audit committee of the company's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
 - (a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the company's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
 - (b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the company's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: October 31, 2018

/s/ Dr Paul Kasian

Dr Paul Kasian

Chief Executive Officer

SARBANES-OXLEY SECTION 302(a) CERTIFICATION

I, Kevin Fischer, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this annual report on Form 20-F of Genetic Technologies Limited;
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the company as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the company and have:
 - (a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the company, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
 - (b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
 - (c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the company's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
 - (d) Disclosed in this report any change in the company's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the period covered by the annual report that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect the company's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the company's auditors and the audit committee of the company's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
 - (a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the company's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
 - (b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the company's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: October 31, 2018

/s/ Kevin Fischer
Kevin Fischer
Chief Financial Officer

CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO 18 U.S.C. SECTION 1350,
AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO
SECTION 906 OF THE U.S. SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002

In connection with the Annual Report of Genetic Technologies Limited (the “Company”) on Form 20-F for the fiscal year ended June 30, 2018, as filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission on the date hereof (the “Report”), I, Paul Kasian, Chief Executive Officer, certify, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. section 1350, as adopted pursuant to section 906 of the U.S. Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, that to the best of my knowledge:

- (i) the Report fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the U.S. Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and
- (ii) the information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and results of operations of the Company.

/s/ Dr Paul Kasian

Name: Dr Paul Kasian

Chief Executive Officer

October 31, 2018

CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO 18 U.S.C. SECTION 1350,
AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO
SECTION 906 OF THE U.S. SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002

In connection with the Annual Report of Genetic Technologies Limited (the “Company”) on Form 20-F for the fiscal year ended June 30, 2018, as filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission on the date hereof (the “Report”), I, Kevin Fischer, Chief Financial Officer, certify, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. section 1350, as adopted pursuant to section 906 of the U.S. Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, that to the best of my knowledge:

- (i) the Report fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the U.S. Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and
- (ii) the information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and results of operations of the Company.

/s/ Kevin Fischer

Name: Kevin Fischer
Chief Financial Officer

October 31, 2018

CONSENT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

We hereby consent to the incorporation by reference in the Registration Statement on Form F-3 (No. 333-210965) of Genetic Technologies Limited (the “Company”) of our report dated October 31, 2018 relating to the financial statements, which appears in this Form 20-F.

/s/PricewaterhouseCoopers
Melbourne, Australia
October 31, 2018

gene-20180630.xml

gene-20180630.xsd

gene-20180630_cal.xml

gene-20180630_lab.xml

gene-20180630_pre.xml